













# **CAMBRIDGE HINDI GRAMMAR**




By

**JAGDISH CHANDRA SHASTRI, M.A.**

**KAVYATIRTH, HINDI PRABHAKAR**

**SENIOR HINDI MASTER**

**St. Andrew's Colonial Homes. Kalimpong.**



**SHARDA MANDIR,**

**Publishers & Book-sellers,**

**DELHI.**

*Published by :—*  
**Sharda Mandir,**  
**Egerton Road,**  
**DELHI.**



**All Rights Reserved.**



*Printed by :—*  
**Shiva Nand Sharma,**  
**at Adarsh Printing Press.**  
**DELHI.**

*To  
All Those Foreigners  
Who Love My Mother Tongue  
Hindi*

**Kalimpong,  
May 14, 1939**

**—J. C. S.**



## ***Note on the second Edition :***

I am pleased that Mr Shastri has found time to make a thorough revision of the "Cambridge Hindi Grammar" for this new Edition. Since he wrote it, he has gained much experience at this school and good Indian Public Schools in preparing boys for the Cambridge School Certificate Examinations. All that I wrote in the original Foreword about the importance of Hindi teaching in European Schools, should be doubly stressed now when H. M. G. has declared its intention to hand the Government of this country over to the Indians by June 1948. It will now be essential that all the pupils in these Schools should be bilingual, having equal facilities in the use of English and a Vernacular. I go so far as to suggest that some of the contents of the curriculum should be taught in the medium Hindi; starting say with Indian History. This new orientation will create a demand for good Hindi Text Books, and I have

much pleasure in recommending this new Edition  
for use in European Schools and by all keen  
students in Hindi.

**J. T. LLOYD.**

**B. A. (Hons.), E. D.**

**Headmaster,**

**St. Andrew's Colonial Homes,**

**Kalimpong.**

6-3-47

# **FOREWORD**

## **FIRST EDITION.**

I have much pleasure in writing a foreword to this book, entitled "Cambridge Hindi Grammar," compiled by Mr. Jagdish Chandra Shastri, the Senior Hindi Master at the St. Andrew's Colonial Homes' School.

Gone are the days when the teaching of a vernacular was considered of little importance in European Schools and when greater attention was given to Latin and French. Educational Departments are now insisting on every pupil acquiring a sound knowledge of a vernacular and rightly so, for most of our pupils have to live their lives in India and mix with Indians and without an Indian Language they start life with a great handicap. Leaders of the Anglo-Indian community are equally insistent on this, for they realize that their children must be able to hold their own among Indians and on an equal footing, and so they must have a sound working knowledge of the vernacular of the province they belong to. Of these vernaculars Hindi is surely one of the most



important and for Anglo-Indian children, who often move from one province to another, it will be found generally useful.

This book is the outcome of the practical experience of the author in teaching Hindi to senior classes working for the Cambridge and Matriculation Examinations and it covers the syllabus of the Junior and Senior Cambridge and the Calcutta Matriculation. It is not meant for beginners but it can be used from class VI or VII and upwards, after the more elementary instruction has been given in the language from classes III or IV of the Junior School.

In every section there are sample exercises for practice, and there are chapters on translation and composition, and a complete vocabulary of about 1000 words at the end, with the genders of all the nouns clearly given. It is fuller and more comprehensive than most of the books for schools already on the market, and I feel sure it will prove a good handbook all practical purposes.

I am glad the author has endeavoured to avoid all high-flown literary words borrowed from the Sanskrit or Persian languages and has introduced instead just those words which are in

common use by Hindi-speaking people in their everyday life.

As the book has been published by a Delhi firm, it was not possible for the Author to correct all the proofs personally and he regrets there are a few errors in printing in spite of all the care and precaution taken by the publishers. These will be carefully corrected in the second edition.

Mr. J. C. Shastri will welcome any criticism or suggestions which his fellow teachers of Hindi may offer and these will be carefully considered and incorporated in a later issue.

A Teacher's Handbook including a key to all the exercises will be published separately.

**J. T. LLOYD** B. A. (Hons), E.D.,

Kalimpong, ] Head Master,  
18th April 1939] St. Andrew's Colonial Homes,  
H. G. School,



## **ACKNOWLEDGMENTS**



In preparing the book the author has naturally consulted all the grammars and dictionaries to which he had access, but his acknowledgments are specially due to Kellogg, Greaves, Dann, McMillan, Sircar, Singh and Christian Brothers. His thanks are moreover due for the help of Miss McFadyen, Mr. Mrs. Bamfield and Mr. Scott who kindly revised some sections of the Mss. Further he desires to express his thanks to Mr. J T. Lloyd B. A. (Hons.) Head Master, St A. C. Homes for his continuous guidance and help and for writing a foreword, and to Prof. Sudhakar M. A. who corrected the proofs.

-J. C. S.



# CONTENTS



	Pages,
<b>PART I</b>	
Grammatical Terms in English	1- 230
CHAPTER I, Letters	1-20
Lesson 1. The Hindi Alphabet	1
„ 2. Pronunciation	3
„ 3. Classification of Letters	8
„ 4. Writing	11
„ 5. Conjunct Letters	17
CHAPTER II, Etymology	21-44
„ 6. Hindi words	21
„ 7. The Parts of Speech in outline	23
„ 8. Nouns	26
„ 9. Gender of Nouns	29
„ 10. Formation of Feminine Gender	36
„ 11. Number	40
CHAPTER III, Cases	45-57
„ 12. Cases I	45

	Pages
<b>Lesson 13. Case II.</b>	<b>48</b>
„ 14. Declension of Nouns	52
CHAPTER IV. Adjectives	58-75
„ 15. Adjectives	58
„ 16. Comparision of Adjectives	62
„ 17. Adjectives (some more usages)	65
„ 18. Numerals	68
CHAPTER V. Pronouns	76-105
„ 19. Pronouns	76
„ 20. Honorific pronoun	81
„ 21 Reflexive Pronoun	85
„ 22 Interrogative & Relative Pronouns	89
„ 23. Definite (Demonstrative) Pronoun	94
„ 24. Indefinite Pronoun कोई & कुछ	97
„ 25. Pronominal Adjectives	102
CHAPTER VI. Participles	106-117
„ 26. Participles	106
„ 27. Use of Participles	110
„ 28. The Conjunctive Participle	113
„ 29 Infinitives	115

	Pages
CHAPTER VII. Verbs	118-148
Lesson 30. Verbs	118
„ 31. Verb, Mood, Tenses, Number Person, Gender, Moods	120
„ 32. Imperfect Tenses	123
„ 33. Perfect Tenses	125
„ 34. Conjugation of Transitive Verb	129
„ 35. Future Tenses	132
„ 36. Imperative Mood	136
„ 37. Contingent Future	138
„ 38. Continuous or Progressive Tense	142
„ 39. Revision of Tenses	145
CHAPTER VIII. Verbs	149-175
„ 40. Causal Verb	149
„ 41. Passive Voice	154
„ 42. Compound Verb Group I	156
„ 43. Compound Verb Group II	160
„ 44. Compound Verb Group III	162
„ 45. The Verb (to have & to be)	167
„ 46. Some Idiomatic uses of the Verb	170



	Pages
<b>CHAPTER IX. Indeclinables</b>	<b>176-203</b>
<b>Lesson 47. Indeclinables</b>	<b>176</b>
<b>Adverbs</b>	
" 48 Simple Post position I	182
" 49.         "         "         II	185
" 50. Compound Post Positions	189
" 51. Conjunction and Disjunction	194
" 52. Interjection	198
" 53. Prefixes	203
" 54. Suffixes	203
<b>CHAPTER X. Miscellaneous</b>	<b>208-228</b>
" 55. Direct Speech	208
" 56. Syntax I	212
" 57.         " II	215
" 58. Common Errors	220
<b>APPENDIX</b>	<b>229</b>
<b>PART II Idioms and Proverbs</b>	<b>231-242</b>
100 Useful Idioms (मुहावरे)	232
50 Proverbs (कहावर्ते)	238
<b>PART III Translation</b>	<b>243-268</b>
40 Exercises from English into Hindi with Notes on difficult words and Phrases	243

	<b>Pages</b>
<b>PART IV Composition</b>	<b>269-280</b>
Letter writing	<b>271</b>
Subjects for Essays	<b>279</b>
<b>PART V Test Questions</b>	<b>281-308</b>
<b>PART VI Vocabulary</b>	
(481 words classified in 30 groups)	<b>309-324</b>
<b>PART VII Vocabulary</b>	
(English-Hindi, 753 words)	<b>325-364</b>





# ***PART I.***



## **GRAMMAR**



# Cambridge Hindi Grammar.

## CHAPTER I.

### LETTERS. (वर्णविचार)

#### LESSON 1.

#### THE HINDI ALPHABET (वर्णमाला)

#### Vowels (स्वर)

1. The Hindi Alphabet consists of forty-six letters.
2. There are eleven vowels.
3. These four are short :  
अ *a*, इ *i*, उ *u*, ए *ri*,
4. The rest are long :  
आ *a'*, ई *i'*, ऊ *u'*, ऐ *e'*, औ *o*, औ *au*,
5. There are two semi-vowels :  
अं *an*, अः *ah*.

#### Vowels.

अ <i>a</i>	आ <i>a'</i>	इ <i>i</i>	ई <i>i'</i>
उ <i>u</i>	ऊ <i>u'</i>	ए <i>ri</i>	
ऐ <i>e'</i>	औ <i>ai</i>	ओ <i>o</i>	औ <i>au</i>

**Semi-Vowels.**

. 711. 1

अ

अः ah

6. All the vowels except अ have a medial form ( मात्रा ) which is used only when they are written with consonants.

Vowel	Medial form	With a consonant
अ a	none	—
आ a'	।	का ka'
इ i	ि	कि ki
ई i'	ी	की ki'
उ u	ु	कु ku
ऊ u'	ू	कू ku'
ऋ ri	ृ	कृ kri
ए e	े	के ke
ऐ ai	ै	कै kai
ओ o	ो	को ko
औ au	ौ	कौ kau
अं an	ं	कं kan
अः ah	ः	कः kah

**Consonants.**

1. There are thirtyfive consonants :—

Gutturals	क <i>k</i>	ख <i>kh</i>	ग <i>g</i>	घ <i>gh</i>	ङ <i>ṅ</i>
Palatals	च <i>ch</i>	छ <i>chh</i>	ज <i>j</i>	झ <i>or</i> झ <i>jh</i>	ञ <i>ṇ</i>
Cerebrals	ट <i>t</i>	ठ <i>th</i>	ड <i>d</i>	ढ <i>dh</i>	ण <i>or</i> ण <i>n</i>
			ड़ <i>r</i>	ढ़ <i>rh</i>	
Dentals	त <i>t</i>	थ <i>th</i>	द <i>d</i>	ध <i>dh</i>	न <i>n</i>
Labials	प <i>p</i>	फ <i>ph</i>	ब <i>b</i>	भ <i>bh</i>	म <i>m</i>
Semi-Vowels	य <i>y</i>	र <i>r</i>	ल <i>l</i>	व <i>w or v</i>	
Sibilants	श <i>sh</i>	ष <i>sh</i>	स <i>s</i>		
Aspirate	ह <i>h</i>				

2. क्ष *or* क्ष *ksh*      त्र *tr*    and    झ *are*    conjunct  
letters

क्ष *or* क्ष *ksh* = क *k* + ष *sh*

त्र *tr*                =    त *t* + र *r*

झ *gn or gy* =    ज *j* + ञ *n*

**LESSON 2.****PRONUNCIATION.**

Mr. Edwin Greaves writes in his well-known  
Hindi Grammar :—

• “In seeking to acquire a correct pronunciation it may be well to consider three points :—



1. "The pronunciation must be learned from the lips of an Indian teacher. Watching attentively the speaker as well as listening to the sounds, is a matter of much importance. Every endeavour should be made to ascertain how the sounds are made, where the tongue is placed etc."

2. "The pronunciation of the letters should be learned as the letters occur in words."

3. "It is still better to group the words in phrases or short sentences, for sounds do not assume their true balance and power, until they take their place as parts of words and sentences."

As the Roman Alphabet does not express the sounds of Hindi letters properly, we shall give Hindi words along with the nearest possible English equivalents."

### Vowels (स्वर)

अ	sounds like	a	as in English	America	or Hindi	अब	ab
आ	„	a <sup>a</sup>	„	„	father	„	आम a'm
इ	„	i	„	„	wrist	„	इमली imali'
ई	„	e'e	„	„	feet	„	ईख ikh
उ	„	u	„	„	bull	„	उठ u'h
ऊ	„	u'	„	„	rule	„	ऊन u'n

रि	sounds like	ri	as in	English	drink	or	Hindi	रिषि	<i>rishi</i>
ए	„	<i>e</i>	„	„	they	„	एक	<i>e'k</i>	
ऐ	„	<i>ai</i>	„	„	aisle	„	ऐनक	<i>ainak</i>	
ओ	„	<i>o</i>	„	„	stone	„	ओज	<i>oj</i>	
औ	„	<i>ou</i>	„	„	round	„	औरत	<i>aurat</i>	
अं	„	<i>an</i>	„	„	...	„	अंदा	<i>a<sup>n</sup>-da'</i>	
अः	„	<i>a<sup>h</sup></i>	„	„	...	„	दुःख	<i>du<sup>h</sup>-kh</i>	
अंख	„	...	„	„	...	„	अंख	<i>a<sup>n</sup>-kh</i>	

### Consonants ( व्यञ्जन )

क	sounds like	<i>k</i>	as in	kill	or	Hindi	कल	<i>kal</i>
क़	„	<i>ku</i>	„	Quran	„	क़ुरान	<i>Qura'n</i>	
ख	„	<i>kh</i>	„	backhand	„	खाना	<i>kha'na'</i>	
				(one word)				
ख़	„	<i>ck</i>	„	Scottish, Loch	„	ख़ुरी	<i>khush</i>	
ग	„	<i>g</i>	„	gum	„	गदहा	<i>gadaha'</i>	
ग़	„	<i>g</i>	„	gone	„	बारा	<i>ba'g</i>	
				(deep throaty and guttural)				
घ	„	<i>gh</i>	„	log-house	„	घर	<i>ghar</i>	
ङ	„	<i>ng</i>	„	England	„	रङ्ग	<i>rang</i>	
च	„	<i>ch</i>	„	chum	„	चल	<i>chal</i>	
छ	„	<i>chh</i>	„	church-house	„	छाता	<i>chha'ta'</i>	
				(run together)				
ज	„	<i>j</i>	„	jug	„	जल	<i>jal</i>	

झ or झ sounds like *dge* as in English hedgehog or Hindi

झट *jhat*

( *pronounced together very quickly* )

ञ ,, *gnia* ,, bunch ,, इञ्जन *injan*

ट ,, *t* ,, boat ,, टमटम *tamtam*

( *with tongue on roof of mouth* )

ठ ,, *th* ,, anthill ,, ठग *thag*

( *pronounced quickly; explosive, with tongue  
on roof of mouth* )

ड ,, *d* ,, hard ,, डाक *Da'k*

ड़ ,, *r* ,, whir ,, लड़का *laraka'*

( *place tongue in same position as cerebral  
d (ड) and pronounce 'the English r* )

ढ Sounds like *dh* as in English landholder or Hindi  
( *cerebral explosive* ) ढकना *dhakana'*

ढ़ ( *aspirate of ड* ) *rh* as in Hindi पढ़ना *parhna'*

ण or ण ,, ,, *n*

( *turn the tongue back as far as cerebral ट  
and then try to pronounce n* )

त ,, ,, *t* Welsh pronunciation of 't' तुम *tum*

( *push the upper teeth with the tip of the tongue* )

थ ,, ,, *th* as in English thermometer or Hindi था *tha'*

द sounds like *th* as in English them or Hindi दे दो *de*/*do*  
 ध ,, ,, *dh* ,, madhouse ,, घोबी *dhobi*  
 (*pronounced together*)

न	,,	,,	<i>n</i>	,,	name	,,	नहीं	<i>nahin</i>
प	,,	,,	<i>p</i>	,,	pull	,,	पुल	<i>pul</i>
फ	,,	,,	<i>ph</i>	,,	loophole	,,	फूल	<i>phool</i>
फ	,,	,,	<i>f</i>	,,	fat	,,	फसल	<i>fasal</i>
ब	,,	,,	<i>b</i>	,,	bulb	,,	बकरी	<i>bakari</i>
भ	,,	,,	<i>bh</i>	,,	Club-house	,,	भात	<i>bha't</i>
म	,,	,,	<i>m</i>	,,	month	,,	माली	<i>ma'li</i>
य	,,	,,	<i>y</i>	,,	yell	,,	यह	<i>yah</i>
र	,,	,,	<i>r</i>	,,	rubber	,,	रबड़	<i>rabar</i>
ल	,,	,,	<i>l</i>	,,	love	,,	लडका	<i>larka'</i>
व	,,	,,	<i>w</i> or <i>v</i>	,,	wait, veal	,,	वह	<i>wah</i>
श	,,	,,	<i>sh</i>	,,	sheet	,,	शीशा	<i>shi' sha'</i>
ष	,,	,,	<i>sh</i>	,,	shot	,,	मनुष्य	<i>manushya</i>
स	,,	,,	<i>s</i>	,,	sun	,,	सलाम	<i>salā'm</i>
ह	,,	,,	<i>h</i>	,,	half	,,	हट	<i>hat</i>

### Conjunct Letters.

क्ष	,,	,,	<i>ksh</i>	,,	अक्षर	<i>akshar</i>
त्र	,,	,,	<i>tr</i>	,,	पत्र	<i>patra</i>
ज्ञ	,,	,,	<i>gy</i>	,,	आज्ञा	<i>a' gya'</i>

### EXERCISES.

1. Read aloud :

(a) ओ, इ, अं, ई, आ, औ, ऋ, ए; अः, उ, ऐ. अ

(b) ग, छ, ङ, न, भ, ल, ष, ह, च, ख, ज, ठ, घ, ञ, फं,  
ब, व, ज, द, थ, स, द, घ, व, ढ, त, प, र, श, क,  
क, झ, ट, थ, झ, ङ, ण, म

2. Write out the English equivalent :—

बा, दि, दू, टो, री, नौ, अं, दुः, कृ, कै, हि, आ, के, बै

3. Read aloud :

बाजार, किताब, गरीब, कूद, जुलाहा, पेड़, बैठा, कटोरा,  
नौकर. अंधा, आंख, दुःख, मृग ।

---

### LESSON 3.

#### CLASSIFICATION OF LETTERS.

“The Hindi Alphabet is peculiarly scientific, as will be discovered by carefully studying the ‘Classification of Letters’ Chart.” (*Greaves*) “It is arranged on a thoroughly scientific method, the simple vowels (short and long coming first, then the diphthongs, and lastly the consonants in uniform groups according to the organs of speech with which they are pronounced. Thus the dental consonants appear together *ps t, th, d, dh, n,* and labial as *p, ph, b, bh, m,*” (*Macdonall*).

Hindi's claim to have the most scientific and perfect alphabet is admitted by no less a person than Sir Isaac Pitman who said, “If there is any perfect and all round alphabet in the world, it is Devnagri’ (Hindi).”.

**Classification of Setters.**

	Hard			Soft							
	Hard mutes			Soft mutes							
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
	Unaspirated	Aspirated	Sibilants	Unaspirated	Aspirated	Nasals	Semi Vowels	Aspirated	Short vowels	Long vowels	Diphthongs
Gutturals.	क	ख		ग	घ	ङ		ङ	अ	आ	
Palatals.	च	छ	श	ज	झ	य	य		इ	ई	२
Cerebrals. <sup>1</sup>	ट	ठ	ष	ड	ढ	ण	र		ऋ	ॠ	
Dentals.	त	थ	स	द	ध	न	ल				
Labials.	प	फ		ब	भ	म	व	४	उ	ऊ	३
											ओ

**Note—1.** Also called Linguals.

2. More precisely called Gutturo-palatals

3. „ „ Gutturo-labials.

4. „ „ Dento-labials

The following notes will help the student to understand the chart.

1. Gutturals are uttered from the throat.
2. Palatals are spoken with the aid of the palate.
3. Cerebrals are uttered by bringing the tip of the tongue backward and applying it to the roof of the mouth.
4. Dentals are spoken by means of the teeth and tip of the tongue put close behind the teeth.
5. Labials are uttered by the lips.

### Diphthongs

6. ए is made up of अ+इ and ऐ is made up of अ+ए. So they are palato-gutturals.
7. ओ=अ+उ and औ=अ+ओ, are labio-gutturals.
8. व is dento-labial.

### Soft Letters

9. The letters are divided into hard and soft. If the breath goes freely or is only partially arrested in uttering a letter that letter is soft ( see cols. 4—11 ).

### Hard Letters

10. In the pronunciation of hard letters the is completely arrested. ( see cols. 1—3 ).

**Nasals**

11. The breath is allowed to escape partially through the nose in pronouncing the nasals ( see col. 6 ).

**Short and long Vowels.**

12. A short vowel has a corresponding long vowel अ—आ, इ—ई, उ—ऊ,

**Aspirated and Unaspirated .**

13. Consonants are further divided into two classes namely aspirated and unaspirated. In the aspirated consonant the sound of *h* is distinctly audible. All the consonants in cols. 2, 3, 5, 8 are aspirated and the rest of the letters inclusive of the vowels are unaspirated.

**Semi-Vowels**

14. Semi vowels are so called because they partake the nature of both consonants and vowels.

**LESSON 4.****WRITING ( लिखना )**

1. Hindi is written in Devnagari' ( देवनागरी ) characters.
2. There is no capital letter in Hindi.
3. All the letters (except three च, भ, म) have lines on the top.



### Writing of Vowels

1. The vowels are written in their initial forms, when they are written as independent letters.

आम *a'm*

एक *e'k*

कोई *koi*

पाई *pa'i*

2. All the Vowels except अ (*a*) have medial forms. They are called मात्रा (*ma'tra'*) in Hindi and are written behind, below, above or in front of a consonant. There are thirteen vowel symbols including the three semi-vowels अं (*ṁ*), अः (*aḥ*) and अँ (nasal) (see Lesson 1.) (i) Five of them are written on the righthand side.

Letters	Symbols	Sounds	Examples
आ	।	<i>a'</i>	काला <i>ka'la'</i>
ई	ी	<i>i'</i>	रोटी <i>roti'</i>
ओ	े	<i>o</i>	कोट <i>kot</i>
औ	ै	<i>au</i>	कौन <i>kaun</i>
अः	:	<i>aḥ</i>	दुःख <i>duḥkḥ</i>

(ii) इ is written on the left hand side :

इ    ि    *i*    पिता    *pita'*  
          ि    ,,    लिखना    *likhana'*

(iii) Four of them are written directly over the letters.

Letters	Symbol	Sounds	Examples
ए	◌े	e'	केला <i>ke' la'</i>
ऐ	◌ै	ai	कैसा <i>ka'isa'</i>
अं	◌ं	a <sup>n</sup>	पंखा <i>pa<sup>n</sup>kha'</i>
Nasal	◌ं	—	आंख <i>a' nkh</i>

(ii) Three of them are written below the letters:

उ	◌ु	u	कुत्ता <i>kutta'</i>
ऊ	◌ू	o'o	पूरा <i>poora'</i>
ऋ	◌ृ	ri	कृपा <i>kīpa'</i> <i>r</i>

### Writing of Consonants

1. There are two methods of writing consonants:

(i) With a vertical stroke (पाई):

ख	ग	घ	च
ज	झ	ण	त

प	घ	न	थ
ब	भ	म	य
ल	व	श	स

(ii) without a vertical stroke :

क	ङ	छ	ट
ड	ड़	ढ़	ढ
र	ह		

2. All the letters have a horizontal line above except घ, भ and ऋ in which the line is slightly broken. These letters are often confused with व, फ and म whose top *lines* are unbroken. Notice the difference :

घ	व
भ	म
ऋ	भ or फ

3. Some letters have alternate form :

अ—अ <i>a</i>	आ—आ <i>a'</i>
झ—झ <i>jh</i>	
ण—ण ?	
क्ष—क्ष <i>ksh</i>	
ल—ल <i>l</i>	

### Nine Groups

The following nine groups of letters will be useful to the student when practising writing :

१.	ग	म	भ	म्			
२.	र	ए	ऐ	ण	स	ख	श .
३.	प	ष	फ	अ	आ	ओ	आ
	अं	अः					
४.	ट	ठ	ढ	ढ	द	ध	ध
५.	ड	ड	इ	ई	ह		
६.	य	थ					
७.	व	ब	च	क			
८.	त	त्र	न	ल			
९.	ज	झ	उ	ऊ			

### Symbols

- ( i ) Hal (हल्) which is a mark like ॡ is written under a consonant if it is not followed by a vowel :

क=क + अ

का=क + आ

2. A "Full stop" is indicated by a verticle stroke i and sometimes by ii at the close of a couplet of verse, section, paragraph or chapter. The former is more common.
3. Zero ( ० ) callep शून्य indicates abbreviation.
4. The figure two २ written after a word indicates repetition.

5. Besides these most of the marks and rules of English punctuation are found in modern Hindi books.
6. The following are the numerical symbols:

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
१	२	३	४	५	६	७	८	९	०

### EXERCISES

1. Write out the Hindi equivalents:

- |                |               |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1. A'n——       | 12. Naukar——  |
| 2. l'kh——      | 13. Ganga——"  |
| 3. Mitha' i'—— | 14. Chor——    |
| 4. Ha' thi'——  | 15. A' nkh——  |
| 5. Gula' b——   | 16. Duhkh——   |
| 6. La' o——     | 17. Mri' g——  |
| 7. Bha' iu'——  | 18. Kalam——   |
| 8. 'Paisa'——   | 19. Ka' Taz—— |
| 9. Sabear——"   | 20. Akshar——  |
| 10. Bail——     | 21. Patra——   |
| 11. Mohan——    | 22. A' gya——  |

2. Explain the following symbols :

ॐ ( ईश्वर ), १, ०, २

3. Read aloud :

४	६	३
५	६	९
८	७	६
३	०	१

## LESSON 5.

### Conjunct Letters संयुक्त अक्षर .

It has already been mentioned that all the consonants have the inherent sound of अ and they become *Hal* if they drop that sound. At the beginning or in the middle of a word such letters join with the consonant which follows, thus forming conjunct letters.

It is always advisable to be guided by examples and so we give the following rules which may prove helpful to beginners at this stage.

#### THE CONJUNCT LETTERS ARE FORMED:

- ( i ) By dropping the vertical strokes or side lines of the consonants:— .

च् + च = च्च	as in	बच्चा	<i>bachcha</i>
च् + छ = च्छ	,,	अच्छा	<i>achchha</i>
ब् + द = ब्द	,,	शब्द	<i>shabd</i>
स् + स = स्स	,,	रस्सी	<i>rassi</i>

- ( ii ) By writing one above another in the case of consonants without vertical strokes:—

क् + क = क्क	as in	पक्का	<i>pakka</i>
ट् + ट = ट्ट	,,	खट्टा	<i>khatta</i>

$\text{च्} + \text{ठ} = \text{ट्ठ}$      „     चिट्ठी *chitthi*  
 $\text{ड्} + \text{ड} = \text{ड्ड}$      „     लड्डू *laddu*

(iii) Some conjunct letters have alternate forms:—

$\text{च्} + \text{च} = \text{च्च}$      or     रुच  
 $\text{क्} + \text{क्} = \text{क्क्}$      „     कक्क  
 $\text{ल्} + \text{ल्} = \text{ल्ल}$      „     लल्ल  
 $\text{व्} + \text{व} = \text{व्व}$      „     व्वव

(iv) When त् joins त it takes a different form:—

$\text{त्} + \text{त} = \text{त्त}$      as in     कुत्ता *kutta*  
 $\text{त्} + \text{त} = \text{त्त}$      „     पत्ता *patta*

(v) When र् joins with any other consonant it takes the form of ( <sup>१</sup> ) and goes over the following letter :—

$\text{र्} + \text{ग} = \text{र्ग}$      as in     मुर्गा *murga*  
 $\text{र्} + \text{व} = \text{वर्}$      „     शर्वत *shardat*

(vi) When र् joins with any other consonant it assumes the form of ( — ) and is written at the bottom of the preceding letter:—

$\text{त्} + \text{र} = \text{त्र}$      as in     पत्र *patra*  
 $\text{प्} + \text{र} = \text{प्र}$      „     प्रेम *prem*

(vii) When ट् and ड् join with र they take the form of ( <sub>२</sub> ) : —

ट् + र = ट्र as in ट्रेन train

ड् + र = ड्र ,, ड्राम dram

## (viii) Examples of irregular conjunct letters

द् + य = द्य as in विद्या vidya'

श + न = श्न ,, प्रश्न prashna

क् + ष = क्ष ,, रक्षा raksha'

ज् + ञ = ज्ञ ,, आज्ञा agya'

च् + द् = च्छ ,, चच्छर chaddar'

श् + र = श्र ,, श्री shri'

ह् + म = ह्य ,, ब्राह्मण brahman'

Full Letters

क ग च ज य ध न प ब म य

Abbreviated

क र छ उ त ध न र ङ र

Full Letters

ल व श स

Abbreviated

ल ङ श र

## EXERCISES

### 1. For reading and dictation :

क्या	पक्का	अच्छा	मिट्टी	क्रोध
चिट्ठी	उल्लू	पत्ता	पत्थर	पुत्र
सच्चा	लम्बा	तुम्हारा	गद्दी	विद्या
बन्द	अन्धा	शब्द	छप्पर	प्यास
घण्टा	श्री	प्रश्न	कण्ठ	रस्सी
स्नान	बुद्धि	मनुष्य	स्त्री	मुर्गी



Change the following words in Hindi letters:-

- |                 |                   |                |
|-----------------|-------------------|----------------|
| 1 Khatti'.....  | 11 Matti'.....    | 21 Murgi'....  |
| 2 Bhaddi'.....  | 12 Haddi'.....    | 22 Stri'.....  |
| 3 Jhankna'..... | 13 Brahman.....   | 23 Bachcha'..  |
| 4 Jaldi'.....   | 14 Tumha'ra'..... | 24 Makkhi'..   |
| 5 Kyon.....     | 15 Mitra.....     | 25 Chilla'ta'. |
| 6 Patti'.....   | 16 Kutta'.....    | 26 Prati'din.. |
| 7 Rya's.....    | 17 Mendak.....    | 27 Hindi'..... |
| 8 Manushya..... | 18 Anda'.....     | 28 Tra'm.....  |
| 9 Lassi'.....   | 19 Achchha'.....  | 29 Ma'rg.....  |
| 10 Billi'.....  | 20 Pustak.....    | 30 Sna'n.....  |



**CHAPTER II.**  
**ETYMOLOGY ( शब्द विचार )**  
**LESSON 6**

**Hindi Words.**

Hindi Vocabulary consists of four kinds of words.

1. Pure Sanskrit words called *tatsam* ( तत्सम् )
2. Modified Sanskrit words called *tadbhav* ( तद्भव )
3. Colloquial or pure Hindi words called *deshaj* or *deshi* ( देशी )
4. Foreign words called *bideshi* ( विदेशी )

**SANSKRIT**

**HINDI**

माता

मा mother

मुख

मुँह mouth

ग्राम

गाँव village

कर्म

काम work

मेघ

मेह cloud .

आम्र

आम्र mango

## FOREIGN WORDS

Persian	Arabic	English	Portuguese
रास्ता road, way	आदमी man खबर news	मास्टर master स्कूल school	आलमारी cupboard
बाजार market	मैदान field	आफिस office	कमरा room
तमाशा enter- tainment	गरीब poor कागज paper	डाक्टर doctor टिकट ticket	पादरी clergy- man
आवाज sound हर each	बाकी remain ing	पेंसिल pencil ग्लेट plate	गिरजा church
तैयार ready शिकार hunt- ing	मजबूत strong नकल imita- tion	सिनेमा cin- ema	
किताब book गोल round	उम्र age		

## EXERCISE

1. Translate into Hindi:--

Market

Work

Mango

Paper

Doctor

Room

Church

Pencil

Village

Cupboard

Round

Office

Mother

Field

News

## LESSON 7

## THE PARTS OF SPEECH IN OUTLINE

**The Parts of Speech**—The different kinds of words used for different purposes in a sentence are called Parts of Speech. (*Nesfield*)

There are only five divisions of the Parts of Speech in Hindi. They are :

1. Noun                      संज्ञा
2. Pronoun                सर्वनाम
3. Adjective            विशेषण
4. Verb                    क्रिया
5. Indecline अव्यय. It includes the following four Parts of Speech :
  - (i) Adverb            क्रिया विशेषण
  - (ii) Postposition सम्बन्धबोधक
  - (iii) Conjunction संयोजक or विभाजक
  - (iv) Interjection विस्मयादिबोधक

1. A Noun (संज्ञा) is a word used for naming any thing or person. e g.

राम (Ram) is a boy; शीला (Sheila) is a girl;  
घोड़ा (the horse) is an animal; गाड़ी (a train) is a

thing; कलकता ( Calcutta ) is a city; डर (fear) is a feeling. These are all Nouns.

2. A Prououn (सर्वनाम) is a word used instead of a noun. *e. g.*

मैं I ; तुम you; वह he, she, it; यह this; वह that; मेरा mine, हमारा ours, तुम्हारा yours, उसका his इसका his.

3. An Adjective ( विशेषण ) is a word used to qualify a noun *e. g.*

छोटा small

बड़ा big

काला black

सफेद white

गरम hot

ठंडा cold

भला good

बुरा bad

4. A Verb (क्रिया) is a word by which a statement is made about some person or thing *e. g.*

जाना to go

जाता है is going

करना to do

करता था was doing

खाना to eat

खाया ate

हँसना to laugh

हँसूँगा will laugh

देखना to see

देखता है is looking

देना to give

देता था was giving

पढ़ना to read

पढ़ूँगा will read

5. **An Indeclinable ( अव्यय )** is a word which is not subject to inflexional changes.

(i) **An Adverb ( क्रिया विशेषण )** is a word which modifies a verb. *e. g.*

अब्दुल जल्दी आता है Abdul is coming *quickly*.

अब्दुल यहाँ आया Abdul came *here*.

अब्दुल धीरे धीरे आयगा Abdul will come *slowly*.

(ii) **A postposition ( सम्बन्धबोधक )** is a word used for showing what relation one thing stands to another thing.

राम को बुलाओ Call Ram.

मेज पर किताब है The book is *on* the table.

वह दरवाजे पर बैठा है He is sitting *at* the door.

वह उस पेड़ के नीचे बैठा He sat *under* that tree

*Note*—In English Grammar the Postposition is called Preposition because it is placed before a Noun. But in Hindi it is placed after the Noun so it is called Postposition.

(iii) **Conjunction or Disjunction ( संयोजक or विभाजक )**

राम और सीता Ram *and* Sita

तुम या तुम्हारा भाई      *Either you or your brother*

(iv) Interjection ( विस्मयादिबोधक )

वाह वाह !      *Bravo ! well done.*

हाय ! अब मैं कहाँ जाऊँ ?      *Alas ! where am I to go now ?*

अहा ! केंसा सुन्दर दिन है      *What a lovely day !*

### EXERCISE

In the following sentences point out the Parts of Speech in which **bold letters** are used

राम वन को जाता है ? लड़के पढ़ रहे हैं । आम मीठा है ।  
राम गाड़ी पर है । उसको बुलाओ । नारंगी मीठी होती है ।  
वह दौड़ता है । सूरज चमक रहा है । देवदत्त खूब खेलता है ।  
गाड़ी तेज चलती है । जो तुम कहो तो मैं जाऊँ । ओह ! बड़ी  
चोट लगी है । आपस में मत लड़ो ।

### LESSON 8.

#### Nouns ( संज्ञा )

#### The kinds of Nouns.

There are five different kinds of Nouns :

1. A Proper Noun ( व्यक्ति वाचक ) is the name of one particular person or thing.

2. Common Noun (जाति-वाचक) is a name given in common to any and every person, animal or the thing of the same kind.
3. Collective Noun (समुदाय वाचक) is the name for a group of things.
4. Material Noun (द्रव्य वाचक) is for what a thing is made of.
5. Abstract Noun (भाववाचक) is the name for a quality, state or action.

Proper	Common	Collective	Material	Abstract
सोहन (name)	आदमी man	मेला fair	सोना gold	मित्रता friendship
कलकत्ता Calcutta	पशु animal	भीड़ crowd	चाँदी silver	चतुराई cleverness
हिन्दुस्तान India	पुस्तक book	सेना army	लोहा iron	मिठास sweetness
हिमालय Himalaya	पेड़ tree	सभा meeting	पत्थर stone	लडकपन boyhood
गङ्गा Ganges	फल fruit	भुन्द group	लकड़ी wood	हंसी laughter

### HOW ABSTRACT NOUNS ARE FORMED

The Abstract Nouns can be formed from Nouns or from Adjectives or from verbs.



**1. FROM NOUNS.**

लड़का	+	पन	=	लड़कपन	boyhood
बचचा	+	पन	=	बचपन	childhood
मित्र	+	ता	=	मित्रता	friendship
कवि	+	ता	=	कविता	poetry
चोर	+	ई	=	चोरी	theft
कारीगर	+	ई	=	कारीगरी	workmanship

**2. FROM ADJECTIVES.**

लम्बा	+	ई	=	लम्बाई	length
चौड़ा	+	ई	=	चौड़ाई	breadth
ऊँचा	+	ई	=	ऊँचाई	height
सच्चा	+	ई	=	सच्चाई	truth
भला	+	ई	=	भलाई	goodness
मीठा	+	स	=	मिठास	sweetness
वृद्धा	+	पा	=	बुढ़ापा	old age
सुन्दर	+	ता	=	सुन्दरता	beauty

**3. FROM VERBS.**

पढ़ाना	+	ई	=	पढ़ाई	teaching
छापना	+	ई	=	छपाई	printing
सजाना	+	वट	=	सजावट	decoration
बुलाना	+	हट	=	बुलाहट	call
दौड़ना	-	ना	=	दौड़	race

### Articles

We do not have the equivalents for the English 'a' and 'the' in Hindi. Sometimes no article is used and sometimes they are represented by substitute words.

1. A simple Noun as लड़की means either 'a girl' or 'the girl.'
2. For the Indefinite, एक or कोई is used, thus एक लड़की means 'one girl' or 'a girl' and कोई लड़का means 'a certain boy' or 'any boy.'
3. For the Definite Articles वह or यह is used: यह लड़की this girl, वह लड़की that girl.

### EXERCISES

1. Classify the following Nouns and state their meanings:

लोहा	सेना	फूल
आदमी	दार्जिलिंग	दौड़
मेला	मिठास	राम
मित्रता	पेड़	हंसी

2. Translate into Hindi :

Height	Wood
Call	Gold
Meeting	Book
Ganges	India
Crowd	Old age

## LESSON 9.

**Gender of Nouns**

In English there are three genders (i) **Masculine** (ii) **Feminine** and (iii) **Neuter** gender, but in Hindi there are only two genders, *Masculine and Feminine*. So it is difficult to decide the genders of words that are Neuter in English. The readers are advised to classify animate objects according to sex but in case of inanimate objects they may be guided by the following rules.

All living creatures of male sex are Masculine and of female sex are Feminine.—

**Masculine**

लड़का boy

राजा king

बैल ox

**Feminine**

लड़की girl

रानी queen

गाय cow

**Gender of Inanimate Objects****Masculine**

The following kinds of Nouns are generally Masculine : —

**According to ending :**

1. Nouns ending in अ (a) आ (ā) :—

घर house

कपड़ा cloth

घड़ा jar

पेड़ tree

छाता umbrella

कमरा room

जूता shoe

पंखा fan

## 2. Abstract Nouns ending in पन, आव, पा and स्व :-

लड़कपन boyhood दासत्व slavery

चढ़ाव ascent बुढ़ापा old age

**According to Meaning :—**

## 1. Many natural objects, specially if large : --

सूरज sun संसार world

चांद moon देश country

तारा star समुद्र sea

But पृथ्वी earth, नदी river, झील lake are feminine.

## 2. Minerals and precious stones :

धातु mineral पीतल brass

सोना gold तांबा copper

लोहा iron पत्थर stone

मोती pearl हीरा diamond

But चांदी (silver) and मिट्टी (earth) are feminine.

## 3 Parts of the body :

सिर head कान ear

मुँह mouth नेत्र eye

बाल hair कन्धा shoulder

गाल cheek पेट stomach

दांत tooth पैर foot

हाथ hand शरीर body

चमड़ा skin

But छाती chest, आँख eye, जीभ tongue, बाँह or भुजा arm. देह body are Feminine.

4. Divisions of time :—

वर्ष or साल	year	मास	month
समय	time	घंटा	hour
दिन	day	सोमवार	Monday
सप्ताह or हफ्ता	week		

But रात or रात्रि night and सांझ or सन्ध्या evening are Feminine.

5. Names of hills :—

हिमालय	Himalaya	विन्ध्याचल	Vindhyachal
--------	----------	------------	-------------

6. Some emotions and mental states :—

प्रेम or स्नेह	love	सुख	pleasure
लालच	greed	दुःख	pain
क्रोध	anger	शोक	grief
घमण्ड	pride		

7. Some Nouns are always Masculine :—

चिमगादड़	bat	जोंक	leech
चीता	leopard	पक्षी	bird

## EXERCISES

1. To illustrate the use of gender use the following words in sentences :—

कपड़ा	हाथी
नदी	दांत

जूता	कमरा
गाय	रात
सोना	पेंर

2. Write the Hindi for :—

Week.....	Stone.....
Greed.....	Day.....
Brass.....	Hour.....
Sea.....	Love.....
Umbrella.....	Fan.....

## GENDER OF NOUNS

**Feminine**

The following kinds of Nouns are Feminine :—

**According to ending :**

1. Nouns ending in ई or इ :—

नदी river	रात्रि night
चिट्ठी letter	बुद्धि wisdom
टोपी hat	रीति manner
कुरसी chair	हानि loss
घड़ी watch	स्याही ink

But पानी water, घी clarified butter, जी Feeling दही curd are Masculine.

2. Most Sanskrit words ending in आ :—

पाठशाला school	आज्ञा order
----------------	-------------

सभा	meeting	भाषा	language
दया	pity, kindness	सेना	army
चिन्ता	anxiety	कथा	story

3. Abstract Nouns ending in बट, हट, ई and ता :—

सजावट	decoration	बुलाहट	call
लम्बाई	length	सचाई	truth
मित्रता	friendship	कविता	poetry

4. Nouns ending in ई and denoting parts of the body :—

अंगुली	finger	मुट्ठी	fist	कलाई	wrist
दाढ़ी	beard	हड्डी	bone		
छाती	breast	नाड़ी	pulse		

5. Nouns ending in त and ट :—

रात	night	हाट	market
लात	leg	खाट	bedstead
बात	word, thing	सजावट	decoration
दवात	inkpot	बनावट	make
छत	roof		

But पेट Stomach, कोट coat, खेत field, भात rice are Masculine.

**According to meaning :—****1. Names of rivers :—**

गंगा	Ganges	सिंध	Indus
यमुना	Jumna	सोन	Soan
गोमती	Gomti		

**2. Names of languages :—**

हिंदी	Hindi	अरबी	Arabic
अंग्रेजी	English	बंगाली	Bengali
गुजराती	Gujarati	मराठी	Marathi

**3. Some Nouns are always Feminine :—**

लोमड़ी	fox	मछली	fish
चील	kite	मक्खी	fly
चींटी	ant	चिड़िया	bird
तितली	butterfly		

**EXERCISES****1. Translate the following words into Hindi and state their Genders :—**

Letter ...	Stomach ....
Language ....	Bone... .
Night .....	Field .....
Friendship ...	Army.....
Length ...	Fish ...
Finger ...	Ant ...



2 Form sentences using the following words :—

दिन	सचाई
हिमालय	हिन्दी
दाल (fem.)	दवात
लोमड़ी	भात
आँख	पाठशाला

## LESSON 10

### Formation of Feminine Gender.

There are three different ways in which the gender of nouns relating to living beings is formed :—

1. By a change of ending
2. By change of words
3. By placing a prefix नर male or मादा female.

#### 1. By a Change of Ending

The Feminine forms of Nouns are made :—

1. By adding ई to words ending in अ or आ :—

##### Masculine

##### Feminine

लड़का	boy	लड़की	girl
बेटा	son	बेटी	daughter
चाचा	uncle	चाची	aunt
मामा	maternal uncle	मामी	maternal aunt

**Massuline****Feminine**

मौसा	uncle	मौसी	aunt
नाना	grand father	नानी	grand mother
भतीजा	nephew	भतीजी	niece
कुत्ता	dog	कुत्ती	female dog
बकरा	he-goat	बकरी	she-goat
दास	male-servant	दासी	female-servant
देव	god	देवी	goddess
पुत्र	son	पुत्री	daughter
हृगिण	deer	हरिणी	female deer

## 2. By dropping the final आ :—

भेड़ा	Sheep	भेड़	ewe
भैंसा	he-buffalo	भैंस	she-buffalo

## 3 By adding इन to Nouns denoting occupation or trade :—

धोबी	washer-man	धोबिन	washer-woman
माली	gardener	मालिन	gardener's wife
लोहार	blacksmith	लोहारिन	black-smith's wife
सुनार	gold-smith	सुनारिन	gold-smith's wife
चमार	shoe-maker	चमारिन	shoe-maker's wife
हजाम	barber	हजामिन	barber's wife
तेली	oil-seller	तेलिन	oil-seller's wife

4. By adding **आइन** to the words denoting titles:—

**Masculine**

**Feminine**

पण्डित learned man पण्डिताइन learned man's wife

पण्डित learned man पण्डिता learned woman

दुबे Brahman sect दुबाइन

चौबे „ चौबाइन

गुरु teacher गुरुआइन teacher's wife

5. By adding **आनी** :—

मेहतर sweeper मेहतरानी sweeper's wife, sweepress

नौकर servant नौकरानी maid-servant

देवर husband's देवरानी husband's younger

younger brother brother's wife

6. By adding **नी** in nouns refering to animals and birds :—

बाघ tiger

बाघनी

रीछ bear

रीछनी

हाथी elephant

हाथिनी

ऊंट camel

ऊंटनी

सिंह lion

सिंहनी

मोर peacock

मोरनी

हंस swan

हंसिनी

2. By a change of word.

पिता father

माता mother

Masculine	Feminine
राजा king	रानी queen
बैल ox	गाय cow
भाई brother	बहिन sister
पुरुष man	स्त्री woman
मनुष्य man	स्त्री woman
आदमी man	औरत woman
मदं man	औरत woman
पुत्र son	कन्या daughter
ससुर father-in-law	सास mother-in-law

### 3. By placing a pre-fix

नर तितली male butterfly	मादा तितली
नर पक्षी male bird	मादा पक्षी

## EXERCISE

### 1. Form Feminines :—

देवर .....	तेली .....	मोर ..
घोबी .....	मामा ..	पुरुष ..
लोहार ...	पण्डित .....	पिता ..
राजा .....	भैया .....	बैल ....

### 2. Give the opposite Genders:—

भाई .....	पुत्री .....	औरत .....
देव .....	माली .....	बकरी .....
सिंह .....	भेड़ .....	हाथी .....

3. Compose three sentences in Hindi to illustrate the use of नर and मादा.
4. Translate into Hindi :—

Daughter	Brahman's wife
She-camel	Lady teacher
Mother-in-law	Milk-maid
Lady shop keeper	Pea-hen
Niece	Old woman

## LESSON 11.

### Number ( वचन )

There are only two numbers in Hindi, **Singular** and **Plural**. When a noun denotes *one* object it is Singular ( एक वचन ). When it denotes *more than one* it is Plural ( बहु वचन ).

In dealing with Numbers and Cases of Nouns, Nouns are divided into four classes :—

1. Some Masculine Nouns ending in अ
2. All other Masculine Nouns ending in आ or any other vowel and those ending in a consonant
3. Feminine Nouns ending in इ, ई, उ, ऊ.

4. Feminine Nouns ending in any other letter.

### PLURAL FORMS OF MASCULINE NOUNS.

The Plural Forms are made :—

1. By changing आ ( á ) into ए ( é ) :—

Singular	Plural
घोड़ा A horse	घोड़े Horses
लड़का A boy	लड़के Boys
बच्चा A child	बच्चे Children

But पिता Father, राजा King, मामा Uncle, दादा Grand father and some other words ending in आ of the class II, have the same form in the Plural as in the Singular :—

- 2 All other Masculine Nouns have the same form in the Plural as in the Singular :—

Singular	Plural
उल्लू An owl	उल्लू Owls
भालू A bear	भालू Bears
भाई A brother	भाई Brothers
घर A house	घर Houses
बालक A child	बालक Children

We can know the number of such Nouns from the Verbs :—

• बालक आता है	A child is coming.
• बालक आते हैं	Children are coming.

## PLURAL FORMS OF FEMININE NOUNS.

1. A Feminine Noun ending in ई (ī) makes its Nominative Plural by changing the long ई (ī) into short इ (i) and add ng यँ (yán) :—

Singular	Plural
लड़की a girl	लड़कियाँ girls
टोपी a hat	टोपियाँ hats
नदी a river	नदियाँ rivers
स्त्री a woman	स्त्रियाँ women

2. A Feminine Noun ending in इ (i) makes its Nominative Plural by adding यँ (yán) :—

जाति a race	जातियाँ races
पंक्ति a row	पंक्तियाँ rows
रीति a method	रीतियाँ methods

3. A Feminine Noun ending in या (yá) makes its Nominative Plural by adding an (en) answer :—

चिड़िया a bird	चिड़ियाँ birds
बुढ़िया an old woman	बुढ़ियाँ old women
गुड़िया a doll	गुड़ियाँ dolls

4. A Feminine Noun ending in अ or a consonant makes its Nominative Plural by adding न (en) :—

बहिन a sister	बहिनें sisters
---------------	----------------

Singular	Plural
पुस्तक a book	पुस्तकें books
गाय a cow	गायें cows
रात a night	रातें nights
बात a word	बातें words
औरत a woman	औरतें women

5. Feminine Nouns ending in आ, उ and ऊ make their Nominative Plural by adding एं (en) :—

माता a mother	मातायें mothers
माला a garland	मालायें garlands
सेना an army	सेनायें armies
वस्तु an article	वस्तुयें articles
ऋतु a season	ऋतुयें seasons
बहू a daughter-in-law	बहूयें daughters-in-law

### COLLECTIVE NOUNS AS PLURALS

मनुष्यगण	menfolk
लड़के लोग	boys
पाठकवग	readers ( lit. class of readers )

### Ever-plural words

प्राण life	भाग्य luck, fortune
आप you	बाल hair
लोग people	



## EXERCISES

## 1. Write the Hindi for :—

Rivers.....	Cows.....
Women.....	Words... ..
Birds.....	Hair.....
Garlands.....	Price.....
Armies.....	Life.....

## 2. Give the Plural forms of the following Nouns

मछली	पिता
माता	किताब (fem.)
भाई	घड़ा
हाथी	बहु
ऋतु	रात

## 3. Form sentences using the following words :

घोड़े	बुढ़िया
भाई	बहिनें
स्त्रियाँ	चिड़ियाँ



## CHAPTER III.

### CASES.

#### LESSON 12.

##### Case I ( कारक )

**Definition**—**Case** indicates the relation in which a Noun or a Pronoun stands to some other words in a sentence.

**Eight Cases in Hindi**—There are eight Cases in Hindi, which are formed by adding a Case-sign ( विभक्ति ) or Postposition.

They are as follows :—

Case		Case sign
1. Nominative	कर्त्ता	none or ने ( untranslated )
2. Accusative	कर्म	none or को to
3. Instrumental	करण	से by, with, through
4. Dative	सम्प्रदान	को to, के लिये for
5. Ablative	अपादान	से from, than
6. Genitive	संबंध	का, के, की of
7. Locative	अधिकरण	में, पर in, on, at
8. Vocative	संबोधन	none

The Hindi Postpositions are to some extent the equivalents of the English Prepositions. They are called so because they are placed after a Noun or a Pronoun.

### Inflections of Nouns with Postpositions.

A change of the form is called an inflection. In dealing with the changes the students should always bear in mind the four classes of Nouns already mentioned in the last lesson.

In the Singular there is no inflexional change in classes II, III and IV but in class I the आ is changed to ए ( é ) : —

लड़का — लड़के ने

In the plural ओ is generally added to all the words but sometimes there may be a slight modification of the stem.

Class	Inflexional changes.	Singular.	Plural.
I	आ is changed to ओ	लड़के ने boy	लड़कों ने boys
II	add ों add ओ	घर में in the house पिता से from the father	घरों में in the houses पिताओं से from the fathers
„	ई is changed to यों	हाथी पर on the elephant	हाथियों पर on the elephants
„	„	कवि से by the poet	कवियों से by the poets
„	उ „ ओ	भालू के लिये for the bear	भालुओं के लिये - for the bears

Class	Infexional changes	Singular	Plural
II	उ is changed to ओ	गुरु का of the teacher	गुरुओं का of the teachers
III	ई " इयों	लड़की को to the girl	लड़कियों को to the girls
"	इ " "	रात्रि में in the night	रात्रियों में in the nights
"	ऊ " "	बहू ने daughter in-law	बहूओं ने daughters-in-law
"	उ " "	वस्तु का of the thing	वस्तुओं का of the things
IV	add ओ	माता ने mother	माताओं ने mothers
"	" ी	औरत को to the woman	औरतों को to the women

## EXERCISES

1. Give the Plurals:—

कवि के लिये  
बेटे को  
पिता ने  
हाथी के लिये  
आलू पर

बहू से  
औरत का  
रात्रि  
गौ का  
सेना में

## 2. Translate into Hindi:—

for the teachers	from the mothers
to the fathers.	for the daughters-in-law.
of the boys.	of the poets.
for the bears.	in the houses.

## LESSON 13

## Case II (continued)

1. (a) **The Nominative Case**—When a Noun is used as a subject to a Verb it is said to be in the Nominative Case. There are two forms of the Nominative Case. The first does not use a post-position, e. g.

बालक a child ; लड़का a boy, मैं I.

(b) The second form of the Nominative with नै is called the **Agentive Case** and is used only with all the tenses formed from the Perfect Participle of the Transitive Verbs. e. g.

मैंने मनुष्य को देखा I saw the man.

उसने लड़के को मारा He struck the boy.

2. **The Accusative (Objective) Case**—When a Noun is the direct object to a Verb it is said to be in the Accusative Case. It also has two forms. One form is the same as the Nominative while the other uses the Post-position को e. g.

मैंने एक पुस्तक पढ़ी      I read a book  
 माता ने पिता को देखा है      The mother has seen the  
    father.

3. **The Instrumental Case**—It indicates the means by which an action is performed and the Postposition से (by, with or through) is used with it. *e. g.*

कलम से लिखो      Write with a pen.  
 तलवार से मार डालो      Kill with a sword  
 आदमी आंख से देखता और कान से सुनता है  
 A man sees with ( his ) eyes and hears with  
 ( his ) ears.

4. **The Dative Case**—It denotes the person or thing for which the work is done. As a matter of fact, the Accusative and Dative Cases are the cases of Direct and Indirect object respectively and को (to), के लिये (for), के वास्ते ( for ) are used with the Indirect object. *e. g.*

मोहन को मिठाई दो      Give sweets to Mehan  
 मैंने भिखारी को एक      I gave one anna to the  
 आना दिया      beggar.

वह मेरे लिए भोजन लाया      He brought food for me.  
 गाय के वास्ते घास लाओ      Bring grass for the cow



पलंग पर चादर बिछाओ      Spread sheets on the bed.

मोहन दरवाजे पर बैठा था      Mohan was sitting at  
the door.

वह मेरे घोड़े पर आया      He came upon my horse.

**8. The Vocative Case-** When the Nominative Case is used for the sake of address, it is said to be in the Vocative Case :

It is formed by adding हे, अरे or some other Interjection at the beginning of the Nominative sometimes no Interjection is used.

## हे लड़को !

## Boys !

## हे मित्रो !

**Friends !**

## लड़कियो !

## Girls !

**Note**—In the singular it is identical in form with the oblique form of Nouns. The Plural is the same as the oblique plural without *anusvār*.

## QUESTIONS

- 1, What is the difference between the Instrumental and Ablative Case? Give examples,
- 2, When is the Postposition ने used with the Nominative case? When is it not used?
3. Explain with examples the two forms of the Accusative Case?



- 4 State conditions under which the case-sign का of the Genitive case is changed into के and की,
- 5, Give Vocative Plurals of लड़की, बहिन and माता, What is the difference between the Nominative and Vocative Plural?

## LESSON 14

## Declension of Nouns.

## Class I

## लड़का A boy

Case.	Singular.	Plural.
Nominative	लड़का	लड़के
Agentive	लड़के ने	लड़कों ने
Accusative	लड़का लड़के को	लड़के लड़कों को
Instrumental	लड़के से	लड़कों से
Dative	लड़के को, के लिये	लड़कों को, के लिये
Ablative	लड़के से	लड़कों से
Genitive	लड़के का, क, की	लड़कों का, के, की
Locative	लड़के में, पर	लड़कों में, पर
Vocative	हे लड़के	हे लड़को

All the Masculine Nouns ending in आ are declined like लड़का except a few mentioned in the class II. Some of them are the following :-

लड़का	boy	गद्दा	donkey	घोड़ा	horse .
बेटा	son	भतीजा	nephew	कपड़ा	cloth
कुत्ता	dog	पोता	grandson	कमरा	room
तोता	parrot	तकिया	pillow	घड़ा	jar
पंखा	fan	चमड़ा	leather		

## Class II.

	राजा	A King	बालक	A boy
Case	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nominative	राजा	राजा	बालक	बालक
Agentive	राजा ने	राजाओं ने	बालक ने	बालकों ने
Accusative	राजा को	राजाओं को	बालक को	बालकों को
Instrumental	राजा से	राजाओं से	बालक से	बालकों से
Dative	राजा को,	राजाओं को,	बालक को,	बालकों को,
	के लिए	के लिए	के लिये	के लिए
Ablative	राजा से	राजाओं से	बालक से	बालकों से
Genitive	राजा का,	राजाओं का,	बालक का,	बालकों का
	के, की	के, की	के, की	के की
Locative	राजा में,	राजाओं में,	बालक में,	बालकों में,
	पर	पर	पर	पर
Vocative	हे राजा	हे राजाओं	हे बालक	हे बालकों

**Class IV**

All the Feminine Nouns of class IV are declined like the Masculine Nouns of class II in all cases except the Nominative and Accusative Plurals : —

Case	माता mother		औरत woman		रात night	
	Sing	Plural	Sing.	Plural	Sfng.	Plural
Nominative	माता	मातायें	औरत	औरतें	रात	रातें
Agentive	माता ने	माताओं ने	औरत ने	औरतों ने	रातां ने	रातों ने
Accusative	,	,	,	,	,	,

**Class II (a)** Masculine Nouns ending in आ as पिता father चाचा, मामा uncle, महाराजा King नाना, बाबा, दादा grand father युवा young man etc are declined like राजा.

(b) Masculine Nouns ending in अ as मनुष्य man, घर house, फल fruit, फूल flower, सिंह lion, बाघ tiger, पंडित learned man, कान ear, पहाड़ hill, नौकर servant, नाम name, तीर arrow, पत्थर stone etc. are declined like बालक

**Class IV (a)** Feminine Nouns ending in आ as माता mother, माला garland, लता creeper, कन्या daughter, पाठशाला school, बुद्धि या

old woman, चिड़िया bird etc. are declined like माता.

- (b) Feminine Nouns ending in any other letter as गौ cow, पुस्तक book, आँख eye, चीज thing, घास grass, बात word, भैंस buffalo, कोदी millet, सरसों mustard seed etc are declined like औरत.

## Class II

Case	माली gardener		भालू bear	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nominative	माली	माली	भालू	भालू
Agentive	माली ने	मालियों ने	भालू ने	भालुओं ने
Accusative	माली को	मालियों को	भालू को	भालुओं को
Instrumental	माली से	मालियों से	भालू से	भालुओं से
Dative	माली को, के लिये	मालियों को, के लिए	भालू को के लिये	भालुओं को, के लिए
Ablative	माली से	मालियों से	भालू से	भालुओं से
Genitive	माली का, के, की	मालियों का, के, की	भालू का, के, की	भालुओं का, के की
Locative	माली में, पर	मालियों में, पर	भालू में पर	भालुओं में पर
Vocative	माली	मालियो	भालू	भालुओ

All Masculine Nouns ending in इ or ई are declined like माली and Masculine Nouns ending in उ or ऊ are declined like भालू. They are as follows :—

Ending in इ or ई		Ending in उ or ऊ	
मुनि sage	पापी sinner	गुरु teacher	डाकू robber
कवि poet	बंगाली Bengali	साधु hermit	
हरि name	हाथी elephant		
धोबी washer man	मोची shoe- maker		
भाई brother	मंत्री minister		

### Class III

All the Feminine Nouns of class III ending in इ, ई, उ, ऊ are declined like the Masculine Nouns of class II with the exception of the Nominative and Accusative plurals.

Case	लड़की girl		बहू daughter-in-law	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nominative	लड़की	लड़कियाँ	बहू	बहूए
Accusative	,	,	,	,

All other Feminine Nouns belonging to this class are also declined like the Masculine Nouns of class II with the exception of the plural number in the Nominative and Accusative case.

Case	गौ cow		पुस्तक book	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nominative	गौ	गौएँ	पुस्तक	पुस्तकें
Accusative	,,	,,	,,	,,

**Nouns ending in इ, ई, उ ऊ**

रात्रि night	स्त्री woman	टोपी hat
तिथि date	नदी river	गाड़ी coach
रोति method	रानी queen	लाठी stick
हानि loss	कहानी story	रस्सी string
वस्तु thing	तराजू scales	.
ऋतु season	बालू sand.	

### EXERCISES

1. Give the Genitive Case of :  
लड़का, लड़की, पिता and वस्तु.
2. Give the Ablative Singular and the Nominative and Ablative Plural of :  
धोबी, नदी, घोड़ा, राजा, फल.
3. Give the Nominative Plural of :  
कन्या, रीति, लोटा, माता, बात, छोटी लड़की, भोला लड़का

## CHAPTER IV

### ADJECTIVES

#### LESSON 15

#### Adjectives ( विशेषण )

#### The Kinds of Adjectives

There are altogether eight different kinds of Adjectives :

1. **Proper:** (describing a thing by some Proper Noun) हिन्दी भाषा Hindi language.
2. **Descriptive:** (showing of what quality or in what state a thing is) चतुर लड़का a clever boy, काला घोड़ा a black horse.
3. **Quantitative:** (showing how much of a thing is meant) सब लड़के all boys, कोई आदमी any man, थोड़ा पानी a little water.
4. **Numeral:** (showing how many things or in what order) पाँच आने five annas, दस सेर ten seers.
5. **Demonstrative:** (showing which or what thing is meant) यह पुस्तक this book, वह लड़की that girl.

6. **Interrogative** : (asking which or what thing is meant) कौन सा कपड़ा what cloth ?
7. **Distributive** : (showing that things are taken separately or in a separate lot).  
हर एक सिपाही every soldier; प्रति दिन every day.
8. **Possessive** मेरा बेटा my son; हमारे घोड़े our horses

### Inflexion of Adjectives

1. All the Adjectives agree with Nouns in. Number and Gender.
2. An Adjective ending in **अ** retains its **अ** when it qualifies a Masculine Singular Noun, without a Post-position :

काला घोड़ा                      a black horse.

अच्छा लड़का                      a good boy.

3. **आ** ( **अ** ) will change into **ए** or **ँ** ( **े** ) when there is a Post-position.

अच्छे लड़के ने                      a good boy

काले घोड़े पर                      on a black horse

4. **आ** ( **अ** ) will change into **ए** or **ँ** ( **े** ) when it qualifies a Plural Masculine Noun :

काले घोड़े                      black horses



अच्छे लड़के      good boys

5. आ (a) will change into ई orी ( ) when it qualifies a Feminine :

काली घोड़ी      a black mare

अच्छी लड़की      a good girl

6. All other Adjectives remain unchanged.

### Declension of Adjectives

अच्छा लड़का a good boy.

	Singular	Plural
Non.	अच्छा लड़का	अच्छे लड़के
	अच्छे लड़के ने	„ लड़कों ने
Accus.	अच्छा लड़का	„ लड़के
	अच्छे लड़के को	„ लड़कों को
Instr.	„ „ से	„ „ से
Dative	„ „ को, के लिए	„ „ को, के लिए
Ablative	„ „ से	„ „ से
Genitive	„ „ का, के, की,	„ „ का, के, की,
Locative	„ „ में, पर	„ „ में, पर
Vocative	„ „ हे अच्छे लड़के	हे अच्छे लड़को

## Some Suitable Adjectives.

A fat man	एक मोटा आदमी
A big tree	एक बड़ा पेड़
A ripe mango	पक्का आम
The green fruits	कच्चे फल
Raw meat	कच्चा मांस
An idle boy	आलसी लड़का
An honest man	ईमानदार आदमी
A dark night	अन्धेरी रात
A useful thing	काम के चीज
Fresh milk	तازा दूध
The old woman	बूढ़ी स्त्री
The old women	बूढ़ी स्त्रियाँ
A little water	जरा सा पानी
A few men	थोड़े से आदमी
Many women	बहुत स्त्रियाँ
Some birds	कुछ चिड़ियाँ
Both boys	दोनों लड़के
All my books	मेरी सारी पुस्तकें
All those girls	वे सब लड़कियाँ
Many men	बहुत आदमी
Many times	बहुत बार .

Much time	बहुत सा समय
Some flowers	थोड़े से फूल
Any flower	कोई फूल
Each flower	हर एक फूल
Every „	„
Such a flower	ऐसा (इस तरह का) फूल

### EXERCISE

1. Translate into Hindi :

1. This lazy man. 2. His black goats. 3. Any good woman. 4. That high hill. 5. Both the girls. 6. Such a big fish. 7. This hot water 8. My big sons, 9. Her small daughters, 10. Such a book.

2. Give the Nominative Plural and Genitive Singular and Plural of :

भोला लड़का, छोटी लड़की, सफेद घर, काली टोपी

### LESSON 16.

#### Comparison of Adjectives.

There are three degrees of Comparison :—  
Positive, Comparative and Superlative.

#### Comparatives :

1. The use of the Ablative से (than) is a very common way of expressing comparison.

यह लड़का उस लड़के से छोटा है This boy is smaller than that boy.

यह कलम उससे बड़ी है      This pen is bigger than  
that pen.

2. Sometimes उसकी अपेक्षा (than that) or उसकी  
बनिस्बत ( in Urdu ) is used :

उसकी अपेक्षा यह फूल सुन्दर है      This flower is pre-  
ttier than that flower,

3. अधिक, बढ़कर (more) or कम (less) is also used  
after से and before the Adjective.

### Superlatives :

The best method of expressing the Superlative  
is to use सबसे ( of all ),

सब will be used before the Noun and से after it,  
यह फूल सब फूलों से सुन्दर है

This flower is the prettiest of all the flowers.

2<sup>nd</sup> Sometimes में is used instead of Ablative से :

सब लड़कों में यह लड़का अच्छा है ।

This boy is the best of the lot (among all the  
(boys)

### 3 Some other expressions

बड़े स बड़ा (Singular) the biggest.

बड़े से बड़े (Plural)      „

उत्तम से उत्तम	the best
परम supreme	अत्यन्त exceedingly
बहुत much	ज्यादा (Urdu) much.

## EXERCISE.

1. Translate into English --

- १ सब लड़कों में जॉन अच्छा है ।
- २ सब लड़कियों में सोफिया सबसे सुन्दर है ।
- ३ क्या तुम मुझे इससे मोटी छड़ी दे सकते हो ?
- ४ शहर भर में उसका पता सबसे अधिक घनी है ।
- ५ विलियम एडवर्ड की अपेक्षा दो वर्ष छोटा है ।
- ६ फूलों में गुलाब सबसे बढ़कर सुन्दर होता है ।
- ७ सब पशुओं में सिंह बलवान होता है ।
- ८ बम्बई कलकत्ता से बड़ा शहर है ।
- ९ आज मोती की हालत कल से अच्छी है ।
- १० इस श्रेणी में राम सब से होशियार लड़का है ।

2. Translate into Hindi.

1. This book is big,
2. That book is bigger than this,
3. My book is biggest of the three.
4. This chair is larger than that,
5. Tell me, which of these two girls is taller,
6. This yellow mango looks riper than that red one,

7. He is older than I am.
8. This man is stronger than that man.
9. John is the cleverest of all the men.
10. This flower is the prettiest of all flowers.

## LESSON 17.

### ADJECTIVES

#### ( SOME MORE USAGES )

#### USE OF सा, से, सी.

The Adjectival suffixes सा, से, सी play an important role in Hindi idioms. The following points should be noted here,

They are used :

1. To express relation or resemblance in quality :

आग सा गरम as hot as fire.

बर्फ सा ठंडा as cold as ice.

2. To express resemblance of a lesser degree and as such it has the force of English.—“ish”

ज्वर सा or बुखार सा feverish, लाल सा reddish

- 3 To intensify an Adjective :

तरकारी में थोड़ा सा नमक डालो Put *a little* salt in the curry.

4. To specialise the Interrogative Pronoun, कौन which :

इन खिलौनों में से कौन सा खिलौना मेरा है ?

Which one of these toys is mine ?

5. To express identity either apparent or real एक सा is used :

ये दोनों चीजें एक सी हैं These two things are alike,

ये दोनों भाई एक से हैं These two brothers are alike.

As an Adjective :

यह कौनसी बड़ी बात है (lit. What great thing is this ? ) It is a trifle.

7. With a Noun or Pronoun in the Genitive case :

बन्दर के हाथ पाँव मनुष्य के से होते हैं ।

The hands and feet of a monkey are like those of a man

## DOUBLE ADJECTIVES

Sometimes another adjective similar, though not necessarily identical in meaning is added to an Adjective to give more prominence to the quality or to intensify its meaning,

दुबला-पतला , lean and thin

मोटा-ताजा stout and fresh (for a strong man)

लम्बा-चौड़ा	long and broad (for a tall man)
मैला-कुचला	very dirty.
कम या ज्यादा	more or less.
ऊँच-नीच	high and low.

### REPETITION OF ADJECTIVES

वहाँ बड़े बड़े राजा आये	many great kings came there
नये नये लड़के	many new boys.
मोठे मोठे फल	only sweet fruits.
उनके तीन तीन बेटे थे	each of them had three son.

### EXERCISES

1. Translate into English :—

- १ धुआँ सा दिखाई देता है ।
- २ उस के कपड़े दूध से सफेद हैं ।
- ३ दूध में थोड़ी सी चीनी डालो ।
- ४ इन जूतों में से कौन सा जूता मेरा है ।
- ५ ये दोनों लड़कियाँ एक सी हैं ।
- ६ इन आमों में से मोठे मोठे आम चुन लो ।
- ७ इस साल स्कूल में बहुत से नये नये लड़के आये हैं ।
- ८ वह आदमी बड़ा मैला कुचैला है ।
- ९ यह कौन सा आदमी है ।
- १० उस सभा में बहुत से बड़े बड़े आदमी आये थे ।



2. Form sentences using the following words :

छोटे, छोटे. पांच पांच. दुबला पतला, कौन सा, थोड़ा सा  
पक्के पक्के, कोयला सा, से, सी ।

## LESSON 18

### NUMERALS

#### 1. THE CARDINAL NUMBERS :—

Numerical symbols			Name	Alter-nate form	Numerical symbols			Name	Alter-nate form
1	१		एक		11	११		इग्यारह	ग्यारह
2	२		दो		12	१२		बारह	
3	३		तीन		13	१३		तेरह	
4	४		चार		14	१४		चौदह	
5	५		पांच		15	१५		पंद्रह	
6	६		छः		16	१६		सोलह	
7	७		सात		17	१७		सत्तरह	सत्तरह
8	८		आठ		18	१८		अठारह	अट्ठारह
9	९		नौ		19	१९		उन्नीस	उनीस
10	१०		दस		20	२०		बीस	

Numerical symbols		Name	Alternate form	Numerical symbols		Name	Alternate form
21	२१	इक्कीस	एकईस	36	३६	छत्तीस	
22	२२	बाइस		37	३७	सैंतीस	
23	२३	तेईस		38	३८	अड़तीस	
24	२४	चौबीस		39	३९	उनतालीस	उनचा-लीस
25	२५	पच्चीस	पचीस	40	४०	चालीस	
26	२६	छब्बीस		41	४१	इकतालीस	एकतालीस
27	२७	सताईस		42	४२	बयालीस	बेयालीस
28	२८	अठाईस	अट्ठाईस	43	४३	तैंतालीस	
29	२९	उन्तीस		44	४४	चौआलीस	चवालीस
30	३०	तीस		45	४५	पैंतालीस	
31	३१	इकतीस	एकतीस	46	४६	झियालीस	
32	३२	बत्तीस	बतीस	47	४७	सैंतालीस	
33	३३	तेईस	तैंतीस	48	४८	अड़तालीस	
34	३४	चौबीस		49	४९	उनचास	
35	३५	पैंतीस		50	५०	पचास	

Numerical symbols		Name	Alter-nate form	Numerical symbols		Name	Alter-nate form
51	५१	इकावन	एकावन	66	६६	छियासठ	
52	५२	बावन		67	६७	सड़सठ	सरसठ
53	५३	तिरपन	तिरेपन	68	६८	अड़सठ	
54	५४	चौवन		69	६९	उनहत्तर	
55	५५	पचपन		70	७०	सत्तर	
56	५६	छपन		71	७१	इकहत्तर	एकहत्तर
57	५७	सत्तावन		72	७२	बहत्तर	
58	५८	अट्ठावन	अठावन	73	७३	तिहत्तर	
59	५९	उनसठ		74	७४	चौहत्तर	
60	६०	साठ		75	७५	पचहत्तर	पछत्तर
61	६१	इकसठ	एकसठ	76	७६	त्रिहत्तर	
62	६२	बासठ		77	७७	सतइत्तर	सतत्तर
63	६३	तिरसठ	तिरेसठ	78	७८	अठहत्तर	अठत्तर
64	६४	चौसठ		79	७९	उनासी	उन्नासी
65	६५	पैंसठ		80	८०	अस्सी	

Numerical symbols		Name	Alternate form	Numerical symbols		Name	Alternate form
81	८१	इकासी	एक्यासी	91	९१	इकानवे	इक्यानवे
82	८२	बयासी		92	९२	बानवे	
83	८३	तिरासी		93	९३	तिरानवे	
84	८४	चौरासी		94	९४	चौगानवे	
85	८५	पचासी	पच्चासी	95	९५	पंचानवे	पचानवे
86	८६	छियासी		96	९६	छियानवे	
87	८७	सतासी	सत्तासी	97	९७	सत्तानवे	सतानवे
88	८८	अठासी	अट्टासी	98	९८	अट्टानवे	अठानवे
89	८९	नवासी		99	९९	निनानवे	निन्यानवे
90	९०	नब्बे	नव्वे	100	१००	सौ	सै

Beyond 100 the numbers proceed regularly

101 एक सौ एक,                      1000 एक हजार

102 एक सौ दो,                      1,00,000 एक लाख

103 एक सौ तीन,                      100 lacs एक करोड़

104 एक सौ चार;

**2. ORDINALS.**

First	पहिला or पहला	Fifth	पाचवाँ
Second	दूसरा	Sixth	छठवाँ or छठा
Third	तीसरा	Seventh	सातवाँ
Fourth	चौथा	Eighth	आठवाँ

**3. PROPORTIONALS.**

दुगना, दुगुना or दूना	Twice or two times
तिगुना	Three times
चौगुना	Four "
पंचगुना	Five "

**4. COLLECTIVES**

	a score	दोनों the, two, both
सैकड़ा	a hundred	तीनों the three
जोड़ा or जोड़ी	a pair	चारों the four
दजने	a dozen	

**5. FRACTIONS.**

१ चौथाई or प ब, १ तिहाई, २ आधा ३ पौन,— १ less पौने, ११ सवा, + १ more सवा, १ १/२ डेढ़, २ १/२ अढ़ाई, + १/२ more साढ़, .

**ADDITION SUBTRACTION ETC.**

Addition	जोड़ना	Multiplication	गुणा करना
Subtraction	घटाना	Division	भाग देना

**Idioms**

दो दो	= two at a time.
चार चार	= four at a time, four apiece.
तीन लड़के	= three boys.
तीनों लड़के	= the three boys.
सौ	= one hundred,
सैकड़ों	= hundreds.
लाख	= one hundred thousand,
लाखों	= hundreds of thousands.
दस लाख	= one million.
हजारों	= thousands.
दो एक	= about a couple
दो चार	= just a few.
दस बजे हैं	= it is ten O'clock.
बारह बजकर दस मिनट	= ten minutes <b>past</b> twelve.
बारह बजने में दस मिनट	=ten minutes <b>to</b> twelve.
सवा बारह बजे हैं	=it is <b>quarter past</b> twelve.
साढ़े बारह बजे हैं	= it is <b>half past</b> twelve.
पौन (पौने एक) बजा है	= it is <b>quarter to</b> one.
सवा (एक) बजा है	= it is <b>quarter past</b> one.
अढ़ाई बजा है	= it is <b>half past</b> two.
पांच बरस का लड़का	= a <b>five year's old</b> boy.
कितने बरस का	= how <b>old</b> ?

**EXERCISES.**

1. (a) Give in figures and write the Hindi of  
25, 42, 58, 36, 57, 65, 7, 60, 76, 237, 485  
79, 96, 81, 94.

(b) Write out in words 175 men,  $2\frac{1}{2}$  seers,  
Rs. 1-8-0,  $7\frac{1}{4}$  annas,  $2\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $2\frac{3}{4}$ ,  $3\frac{1}{4}$ ,

2. Translate into English :—

१. यहां दो हजार सिपाही आये हैं ।
२. इस स्कूल में ५८२ लड़के लड़कियां पढ़ते हैं
३. जब मैं दिल्ली गया तब मैं चौदह बरस का था ।
४. एक रुपये में साढ़े आठ सेर चावल मिलता है ।
५. यह लड़का सातवीं पुस्तक पढ़ता है ।
६. इस घोड़े का दाम सवा तीन सौ रुपया है ।
७. शाम को पौने सात बजे मैं आपके घर आऊंगा ।
८. यह कमरा उस कमरे से तिगुना बड़ा है ।
९. केथरिन ने यह कुत्ता सवा रुपये में खरीदा ।
१०. ग्यारह बजकर दस मिनट पर भोजन तैयार हो जाना चाहिये
११. मित्र ! कल तुम कितने बजे यहां आओगे ?
१२. मेरा घर यहां से पोन मील दूर होगा ।
१३. अब दस बजने में सात मिनट हैं ।

१५. गाड़ी साढ़े पांच बजे बूटेगी ।

१५. हमने उस कविता के पहले और तीसरे पद (Verse) गाये ।

3. Translate into Hindi :—

1. His father died at ten minutes past eleven.
2. 317 soldiers came from the Punjab.
3. This boy is twelve years old.
4. The price of this book is one rupee.
5. There are fifty boys in this class.
6. The meal will be ready at quarter to 7, i.e.  
after half an hour.
7. We shall go to the play ground at half past three
8. Please give me one rupee and four annas.
9. This girl has finished the second book, now she  
will read the third book.
10. I bought this hat for two rupees and four annas.





# CHAPTER V.

## PRONOUNS.

### LESSON 19.

#### Pronouns

A Pronoun is a word used instead of a Noun, but there are also word which are classed as Pronouns but are used as Adjectives. The latter type of Pronoun as called Ponominal Adjectives.

There are eight different kinds of Pronouns:—

- (1) **Personal** as मैं I; तू thou. वह he, she, it,  
तुम you; हम we etc.
- (2) **Honorific** as आप, honour.
- (3) **Reflexive** as अपना own, ourself अपने आप.
- (4) **Possessive** as मेरा my, mine; तेरा they, thine,  
उसका his, her, hers; तुम्हारा your,  
yours; उनका their, theirs.
- (5) **Relative** as जो who, which or that, सो that.
- (6) **Interrogative** कौन who, which, क्या what etc.

**(6) Definite De-****monstrative** वह this, वह that etc.**(8) Indefinite** कोई any, कुछ some. सब all.**Changes in the Form of Pronouns.**

Pronoun undergo the following changes when followed by a Post-position.

pronoun.	यह this	वह that	कौन who	कोई any
Singular	इसको or इसे	उससे	किसके लिए	किसी का
Plural	इनको or इन्हें	उनसे	किनके लिए	किन्हीं का
Pronoun.	जो who	सो that	मैं I	तू thou
Singular	जिसने	तिसको	मुझसे	तुझको or
Plural	जिन्होंने or जिनने	तिनको or तिन्हें	हमसे	तुमको or तुम्हें

The Possessive of तू and मैं will be तेरा, तेरे, तारी, मेरा, मेरे, मेरी, in the Singular, and तुम्हारा-रे-री, हमारा-रे-री in the Plural.

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS (in both Genders )  
Singular.

18

CAMBRIDGE HINDI GRAMMAR

Case.	Demonstrative.		Relative.		Interrogative	Indefinite
	यह this	वह that	जो who	सो that		
Nom.	यह, इस ने	वह, उसने	जो जिस ने	सो, तिस ने	कौन, किस ने	कोई, किसी ने
Accus.	वह, इस को	वह, उस को	को or जिस से	को or तिस से	को or किसी से	को, किस को
Instr.	इस से	उस से				
Dative.	को, के लिये	को, के लिये	को, के लिये	को, के लिये	किसको, के लिये	को, के लिये
Abl.	इस से	उस से	जिस से	तिस से	किस से or किसी से	से
Gen.	इस का, के की	वा. के. की जिसका, के, की	जिसका, के, की	का, के. की	का, के, की	का, के की
Loc.	इस में, पर	में, पर	जिस में, पर	में, पर	में, पर	में, पर

# Plural

Case	Demonstrative		Relative		Interrogetive.
	ये these	वे they	जो who	सो that	कौन who
Nom.	ये, इनने, इन्होंने	वे, उनने or उन्होंने	जो, जिनने or जिनहोंने	सो, तिनने or तिनहोंने	कौन, किनने or किन्होंने
Accus.	ये, इनको, इन्हें	वे, उनको, उन्हें	जो इनको or जिन्हें	„, तिनको or तिनहें	„, किनको or किन्हें
Instr.	इनसे,	उनसे	जिनसे	तिनसे	किन से
Dat.	इन को, के, लिये	उनको, के लिये	इनको, के, लिये	तिन का, के, लिये	किन को, के, लिये
Abl.	इन से	इन्हें or उन से	or जिन्हें जिनसे	or तिनहें तिनसे	or किन्हें किनसे
Gen.	इन का, के की	„ का, के, की	जिनका, के, की	तिन को, के, की	किन का, के, की
Loc.	इन में, पर	„ में, पर	जिनमें, पर	तिन में, पर	किन में, पर

## PRONOUNS

## EXERCISES

1. Give the Hindi for the bold words in the following sentences.

(i) **They** and **these** girls and **you** and **I** will do.

(ii) I have finished reading **all my** books so I want to read **yours**.

(iii) The robber tried to hit **his** (another person's) head with a stone, but hit **his own** instead.

2. Give the Genitive Plural of मैं, तू, वह, आप and Accusative Plural of कौन, जो and Locative Singular of तू, कोई, सो.

3. Correct the following:—

वह ने इस काम किया है ।

मुझ का बेटा छोटा है ।

क्या मैं तुम के लिये दूध लाऊँ ?

कोई लड़के को बुलाओ ।

यह कौन का घर है ?

## LESSON 20.

## Honorific Pronoun.

आप Your Honour, Your Worship, Sir, etc.

## Declension of आप; —

Singular and Plural.

Nom. आप, आपने

Accus. ,, आपको

Inst. आप से

Dat. आपको, के लिये

Abl. आप से

Gen. आपका, के, की

Loc. आप में, पर

- 1 आप is used instead of तुम in addressing one's superior or by equals when in dignified or respectful conversation.
2. With आप as the Subject the Verb is always in the Third Person Plural, e. g.  
आप वहाँ कब जावेंगे When will you go there please?
3. Referring to respectable persons आप is used instead of यह or वह, e. g.  
ग्रीव्स साहब का जन्म लंदन में - था था । आपने हिन्दी का एक अच्छा व्याकरण लिखा है । Mr. Greaves was born in London. He has written a very good Grammar in Hindi.

4. Sometimes **आपका** is used instead of **मेरा** or **हमारा** to express admiration, hospitality and affection.

*e. g.*

यह घर **आपका** है, जब चाहें पधारें This is your (my) house, come whenever you like or talking of his son he may say यह **आपका** बेटा है This is your (my) son.

### Respectful Forms.

Besides the ordinary form of the Imperative there are three other forms :

- 1 The Respectful form of the Verb is formed by adding **इये** to the stem of the Verb :

Verb	Stem	Respectful Forms
देखना	देख	देखिये please see
जाना	जा	जाइये please go :
सुनना	सुन	सुनिये please listen
खाना	खा	खाइये please eat

2. Some other examples :

देना	दे	दीजिए please give
करना	कर	कीजिये please do
लेना	ले	लीजिये please take
पीना	पी	पीजिये please drink

3. कीजियेगा is 2nd Person Plural and it means 'please do it'.

This is also a respectful form and can be formed by adding गा to the respectful form of the Imperative :

पढ़ना	पढ़िये + गा	पढ़ियेगा
करना	कीजिये + गा	कीजियेगा

### Titles of Respect.

1. जी, साहब and बाबू are the titles of respect :  
गुरु जी teacher, पिता जी father, माता जी mother,  
राजा साहब king, मेमसाहब lady, मकई साहब Mr.  
Makai, गोपाल बाबू Mr. Gopal, राम बाबू Mr. Ram.
2. श्री is the short form of श्रीमान् (Masculine) and श्रीमती (Feminine) which mean Mr. or Mrs. respectively.
3. Kindly or Please is translated by कृपा कर के or मेहरबानी करके ।

### Uses of तू, तुम, आप

तू (thou) indicates disrespect. A man may use it to his wife or child to show more affection and also when he addresses God.

तुम (you) indicates equality or relationship and familiarity. It may be used for children and



young people who would be addressed by their Christian names in English,

आप (you) indicates respect. It is generally used while talking to equals or to those in a superior position and also to subordinates with whose names we should retain Mr. in English.

### EXERCISES

1. Translate into English :—

आप अपने घर जाइये

मेरे पिता जी कल आवेंगे

2. आप कब लौटियेगा ?

कृपा कर के यह चिट्ठी पढ़ दीजिए

गुरु जी कुर्सी पर बैठे हैं

रमेश ने कहा मेरे पिता जी आये हैं

महाराज ! क्या आप मेरे भोंपड़े के भीतर आइयेंगे

आप का कहना ठीक है

एक बार महाराजा ने मुझे बुलवा भेजा

आपका जन्म सन् १९०८ ई० में हुआ था

2. Translate into Hindi using Honorific forms throughout :—

Please give me a new book,

How long will you stay here ?

I got a letter from my father.  
 The King was seated on the throne.  
 Please allow me to go.  
 Where do you stay ?  
 He was born in 1900.  
 Our teacher was teaching us.  
 Sir, we will enter your house.  
 The boy said that his elder brother was coming.

## LESSON 21

### Reflexive Pronoun.

1. **आप, अपना** and **अपने आप** are Reflexive pronouns corresponding to English words self or own.
2. They are applicable to all the Three Persons when they refer to the Subject of the main Verb.
3. **अपना** (Apna) is a Genitive and should be treated as an Adjective and must agree in Gender and Number with the Noun it qualifies. It is important to remember that it has no connection with the Number and Gender of the Subject.

#### Examples :

I open my book. मैं अपनी पुस्तक खोलता हूँ

He opens his book. वह अपनी पुस्तक खोलता है .

She opens her book. वह अपनी पुस्तक खोलती है

You open **your** book. तुम अपनी पुस्तक खोलते हो  
 They open **their** books. वे अपनी पुस्तकें खोलते हैं  
 We all open **our** books. हम अपनी पुस्तकें खोलते हैं

Read the above sentences and notice how one word **अपनी** is used for my, his, her, your, their and our. Sometimes स्वयं, खुद, निज are used instead of अपना e.g. आप स्वयं you yourself, वह स्वयं he himself, मैं खुद I myself, निजका own.

### The Reflexive आप

The Reflexive आप (ap) means self and अपने आप means myself, himself, herself, itself and themselves.

	आप (Singular)	अपने आप (Sing.)
Nominative	आप or अपने	अपने आप (never used with ने)
Accu. & Dat.	अपने को, के लिए	अपने आप को, के लिए
Instr. & Abl.	अपने से	अपने आप से
Genitive	अपना, ने, नी	अपने आपका, के, की
Locative	अपने में, पर	अपने आप में, पर

### Examples:

राजा आप आये	The king <b>himself</b> came.
मैं अपने आप आऊंगा	I shall come <b>myself</b> .
वह लड़की अपने आप पढ़ने लगी	The girl began to read <b>herself</b> .

आप क्रोध में अपने को भूल You forget **yourself** when  
जाते हैं you are angry.

सब अपने अपने घर चले गये All went to their **own**  
houses.

मेरा नौकर भाग गया था परन्तु वह आप ही आप आया  
My servant had run away but he came back  
of his **own** accord,

सब लड़के अपने अपने घर गये  
All boys went to their **own** houses.

**Use of आपस, परस्पर, एक दूसरा**

यह आपस में (instead of अपने में) बांट लो  
Share it out **among yourselves**

तुम्हें आपस की लड़ाई आपस में ही निबटा लेनी चाहिए  
You should settle your dispute **among yourselves**.

चोर परस्पर सहायता करते हैं Thieves help **one another**.

भले आदमी एक दूसरे की मदद करते हैं  
Good people help **one another**.

### EXERCISES.

- 1 Translate the bold words in the following and state which are Honorific, Relative and Possessive Pronouns:

(i) O Pandit ! I tell **you** that, Mohan burnt **his** fingers, and Sohan poured oil on **his** (Mohan's) hand.

- (ii) O King ! **you** will see **your** son getting off **his** horse and ordering **his** food to be given **him**.
- (iii) Sit down and take off **your** shoes, and then take off **your** brother's shoes. Now put away **his** shoe and **yours**. (iv) The robber tried to hit **his** head with a stone but hit **his** own instead."

2. Translate into English :—

वह बाजा अपने आप बज रहा है ।

तुम्हारी आयु क्या है ?

राजा साहब अपने महल में बैठे हैं ।

सब लड़के अपने अपने घर चले गये हैं ।

आपस में झगड़ा मत करो ।

वह अपने घर में किसी को नहीं आने देता ।

घोड़ा आप से आप दौड़ने लगा ।

अपने पर भरोसा रख कर काम करो ।

आप स्वयं (अपने आप) वहाँ जाकर देखिये ।

लड़की ने चाकू से अपना हाथ स्वयं काट लिया ।

3. Translate into Hindi :—

The boys have gone to their houses.

He sold his (own) car.

He sold his (another person's) car.

They fed themselves well.

The king is talking about himself.

Don't converse among yourselves.

I saw the thief myself.

William cut his finger himself.  
 I myself bandaged his hand.  
 All of you should mind your work.

## LESSON 22

Interrogative and Relative Pronouns,

### INTERROGATIVE & RELATIVE

कौन ? क्या ?

The Interrogative Pronoun कौन (who, which) is generally used in respect of person and large things and क्या ( what ) mostly in respect to small things and animals. This distinction, however is not exclusively maintained. The following notes will indicate their principal usage.

कौन ( who, which )

1. In questions, in respect to persons, things or qualities for the sake of ascertainment, e. g.

रास्ते पर कौन जा रहा है ? WHO is going along the road ?

इन खिलौनों में से कौन मेरे लिये है ? WHICH of these toys are meant for me ?

ऐसे गुण किसमें पाये जाते हैं ? WHO possesses such qualities ?

2. In questions demanding a definition :

कारक किसे कहते हैं ? WHAT is a case ?

3. To express blood relationship :

सोहन आपका कौन होता है ?

How is Sohan related to you ?

4. To express kind or pedigree :

यह कौन आदमी है अंग्रेज, कि फाँसी सी ?

Who is this man English or French ?

5. To express a depreciation or contempt and imports the idea 'what right', 'on what authority'.

तुम मुझे सलाह देने वाले कौन दो ?

WHAT RIGHT have you to advise me ?

6. As an adverb of particularization.

यह कौनसी बड़ी बात है It is not an important matter.

7. It is repeated to express plurality and depreciation.

उन लड़कों में से कौन कौन यहाँ आये हैं ?

Which of the boys have come here ?

8. To express grief or surprise :

हाय ! कौन मुझे इस विपत्ति से बचायगा !

Oh ! who will save me from this trouble !

क्या WHAT

क्या is not capable of declension. In colloquial however, काहे को 'what for, काहे से with what, is used.

The following are the principal uses of :

1. क्या as an Interrogative :

( i ) Pure Interrogation :

यह क्या है ? What is this ?

तुम्हारा नाम क्या है ? What is your name ?

( ii ) In respect to price :

आप के घोड़े का दाम क्या है ?

What is the price of your horse ?

( iii ) To express contempt, admiration or surprise.

अहा ! क्या सुन्दर फूल है !

Ah ! what a beautiful flower !

2. As a sign of interrogation क्या is untranslated

क्या वह आया है ? Has he come ?

In colloquial क्या is often dropped out and an inquisitive mode is adopted :

तुम वहां गये ? Did you go there ?

3. क्या क्या implies 'what things severally or respectively'.

उसने क्या क्या कहा ? What things did he say ?

क्या क्या हुआ मुझे बताओ Tell me what happened ?

टोकरी में क्या क्या बेचने लाये हो ? What things have you in your basket for sale ?



4. In the sense of 'whether or both' **कय—कया** e.g.  
**कया मनुष्य कया पशु सब बाढ़ में डूब गये**  
 Whether men or animals all were drowned in the flood.
5. **कया से कया** indicates a complete change. e.g.  
**वह कया से कया होगया** He changed altogether.

## RELATIVE PRONOUN

### जो WHICH

- The Relative **जो** is followed by a Correlative **स** and is used both in respect of persons and things,  
**जो पुस्तक मैंने तुम्हें दी थी वह कहाँ है ?**  
 Where is the book that I had given you ?
- In oblique form the Singular is **जिस** and the Plural is **जिन** or **जिन्हों**, The latter is not very commonly used.
- जो जो** is used distributively, e. g. **जो जो खरीदना हो सो खरोदो** । Buy all that you want.

## EXERCISES

- Translate into English :

- यह लड़का कौन है ?
- कौनसी पुस्तक तुम्हारी है ?
- कौन कौन लड़के वहाँ जायेंगे ?

- ४ ये सब मकान किनके हैं ?
- ५ तुम किसकी राह देखते हो ?
- ६ दरवाजा कौन खटखटा रहा है ?
- ७ यह कौन आदमी, हिन्दुस्तानी या अंग्रेज ?
- ८ उसने क्या किया था ?
- ९ क्या उसने तुमको मारा है ?
- १० क्या स्त्रो क्या पुरुष सब उस मेले में गये ?
- ११ जो पढ़ता है वह (सो) अवश्य पास होता है ।
- १२ जो पुस्तक तुम पढ़ते थे सो कहाँ है ?

2 Translate into Hindi :

1. Who are you ?
2. Whose books are these ?
3. Which is new ?
4. Will you come to-morrow ?
5. What do you want ?
6. Which of these are black ?
7. What can I do for you ?
8. Who has called you ?
9. What were you reading ?
10. Did you come to school yesterday ?
11. Where is your brother who came here yesterday ?
12. He who goes, sees.

3 Read the following sentences and explain the meaning of क्या in each case : --

क्या आज गर्मी पड़ रही है ?  
आप भी क्या आदमी हैं ?

वह क्या ही मूर्ख है ?

वह क्या लड़ेगा ?

मैं यह क्या बैठा हूँ, इधर क्यों नहीं आते ?

तुम्हारे पास क्या वह आएगा ?

क्या वह जायगा ?

## LESSON 23.

### DEFINITE (DEMONSTRATIVE) PRONOUNS

यह this      and      वह that

Mr. Mc Millan says “ ‘yah’ and ‘wah’ are used for persons as well as things, and that without reference to gender. **This is a fundamental difference from European languages, that needs to be grasped.** In English, the 3rd Personal Pronoun (he, she or it) does indicate its Gender. In Hindustani it is left to the Adjective or Verb to show whether a Masculine or Feminine person or Object is referred to”.

1. यह (this) is the near Demonstrative and is used to indicate persons and things at close proximity.  
वह (that) is the remote Demonstrative and is used to indicate persons or things at a distance or in absence.

2. यह and वह are inflected as an Adjective :

यह लड़का this boy.      वह लड़का that boy  
 ये लड़के these boys.      वे लड़के those boys.  
 इस लड़के का पिता this boy's father.  
 उस लड़के का पिता that boy's father.  
 इन लड़कों के नाम these boys' names.  
 उन लड़कों क नाम those boys' name.

Note --It should be noted here that when they are used adjectively the Case-sign appears only with the Noun. It is dropped from the Pronoun.

- 3 The Genitive case is inflected to show the Gender and Case :

उस की or उस की बहिन      His sister.  
 उस का or उस का भाई      His brother.  
 उस के or उस के घोड़े      His horses.

4. The Plural forms of यह ( ये ) and वह ( वे ) are used to express plurality and respect :

ये हमारे गुरुजी हैं      He is our teacher.  
 उन का घर कहाँ है ?      Where is his house ?

### EMPHATIC FORMS.

5. The Emphatic form is made by adding ही or ई in the Singular and ही in the Plural.

यही आदमी	This very man.
वही कपड़ा	The same cloth.
इस ने किया	He did it.
इन्हीं लोगों ने किया	These people did it.

## EXERCISES

1. Translate into English : -

वह तैरना जानता है ।

यह चिट्ठी डाक में डाल दो ।

यह देखिये गाड़ी आरही है ।

उस बड़ मेज पर भोजन रखो ।

इस सन्दूक में रेशमी कपड़े हैं ?

क्या उन्होंने इसे खरीद लिया है ?

उसने स्कूल क्यों छोड़ दिया ?

इस आदमी की लड़की अस्पताल में है ।

क्या तुमको यह जगह पसंद है ?

वह आदमी बनारस से यहाँ आया है ।

2. Translate into Hindi :—

When did he come here ?

Do they know swimming ?

This girl's brother will come tomorrow.

He bought 3 big boxes.

Who are these people ?

His brother is still in hospital.

Look, the car is coming.

This is her book not yours,

How do you like this city ?

That is a very big table.

## LESSON 24

### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS      कोई (any) and कुछ (some)

कोई any, anything, any body etc.

1. कोई is declined in the Singular Number only, and is changed into किसी in oblique cases.

2. कोई कोई expresses distribution e.g. :

कोई कोई लोग कहते हैं      Some people say,

किसी किसी देश में      In some countries.

3. कोई is used for 'some one', one, certain etc. e.g.

दरवाजे पर कोई खड़ा है

SOME ONE is standing on the door.

कोई महाशय आपसे मिलना चाहते हैं

ONE gentleman wants to see you.

कोई आदमी राजा से मिलने गया

A CERTAIN man went to see the king.

4. कोई is used as an Honorific Pronoun and takes

Plural Verb, e.g.

कोई आपके पिताजी से मिलने आये हैं

SOME ONE has come to see your father.

5. To emphasize the sense of indefiniteness e. g.

पेड़ पर कुछ आम पक्के हैं. उनमें से कोई सा ले लो

There are some ripe mangoes on the tree, take ANY of them.

6. कोई-कोई in two consecutive clauses may be translated as 'one—other'.

कोई कमाता है, कोई खाता है ।

ONE earns money and the OTHER spends (eats) it.

7. Prefixed to Numerals it imports the idea of approximation :

कोई दस आदमी सभा में आये ।

ABOUT ten persons come to the meeting.

#### **Certain other Phrases and Idioms:**

कोई न कोई                      some one, one or other

किसी न किसी                      „

कोई नहीं                      no body

सब कोई                      every body

हर कोई                      „

कोई दूसरा, कोई और, और कोई, दूसरा कोई anyother e.g.

कोई है ?                      Is there any one: (within hearing, in attendance or about) ?

कोई हो !                      Whoever it may be !

## कुछ

Unlike कोई, कुछ is incapable of declension. Its meaning is represented in English by such words and phrases as any, some, a little, anything, something, some what, whatever, partly.

The following points should be noted about कुछ

1. It may be used to indicate some previously unknown thing, small insects and animals, e.g.

भाड़ी में दिखाई देता है something is seen in the bush.

जल में कुछ चल रहा है some insect is crawling in the water.

2. To indicate a report or rumour, e.g.,

क्या आपने उसके विषय में कुछ सुना ?

Did you hear ANY THING about him?

3. For 'nothing' or 'little' in the negative sentences :

तुम्हारा यहां कुछ भी नहीं है You have nothing here.

4. As an Adverb :

यह कुछ छोटा है This is a bit smaller.

5. As an Adjective :

इस बाग में कुछ पेड़ तो सूख गए हैं और कुछ सूखने वाले हैं ।

In this garden SOME trees are already withered, SOME are on the point of withering.



6. कुछ followed by कुछ in a separate clause often expresses an Antithesis, e.g.

तू बोलता कुछ है और करता कुछ है

You say onething and do another.

7. कुछ is often used for 'some' or 'a few' e.g.

कुछ लोग समझते हैं SOME people think.

### CERTAIN IDIOMS

कुछ से कुछ होना to be entirely changed.

कुछ कुछ more or less, a little.

कुछ का कुछ in a different manner.

कुछ न कुछ something or other

बहुत कुछ a great deal

सब कुछ everything.

जो कुछ whatever.

और कुछ a little more, something additional.

कुछ और " "

कुछ .दन से for some days.

कुछ अच्छा better.

कुछ बामार somewhat unwell.

कुछ एक some few ; a few.

कुछ परवाह नहीं it does not matter.

कुछ हो whatever may happen.

जो कुछ भी हो "

## EXERCISES

## 1. Translate into English :

क्या घर में कोई आदमी है ?

यहाँ तो कभी कोई लड़की नहीं आती ।

कोई महाशय राजासाहब से मिलने आए हैं ।

उसकी बहिन कई दिन से कुछ बीमार है ।

इस पेड़ पर कुछ पक्के फल हैं और कुछ कच्चे ।

याद वह राम नहीं था तो वह कोई और होगा ।

वह सुनता कुछ है और लिखता कुछ है ।

यह छड़ी उस छड़ी से कुछ छोटी है ।

किसी किसी देश में बड़ा जाड़ा पड़ता है ।

कोई पन्द्रह आदमी वहाँ आए थे ।

## 2. Translate into Hindi.

There is one body in the house

Some one has come to see you.

Did you hear any news about your father?

This hat is bigger than that.

Some people think themselves wise.

About fifty people came to his house.

I saw no one there.

Some flowers are quite nice but some are rotten.

Is there any fruit in this tree?

I want something to eat now.

## LESSON 25

## PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

“The Pronominal Adjectives are, as the name signifies, Adjectives formed from the Pronouns. In many instances they are used alone, with a Noun understood; in such cases they are declined as Nouns, otherwise as Adjectives of two terminations. In not a few instances, these words are distinctly Adverbial in their use.” —Greave.

The following table will sum up all such Pronouns :

	Cardinal	Expressive	Expressive
Near De- Pronoun	of Quantity	of Quality	
monstrative यह	इतना this quantity	ऐसा this like	
Remote वह	उतना that "	वैसा that "	
Relative जो	जितना which "	जैसा which "	
Correlative सो	तितना such "	तैसा such "	
Interrogative कौन	कितना what "	कैसा what "	

The following points should be noted here.

1. As Pronouns they may be followed by a Post-position.

इतने से मेरा काम नहीं चलेगा

This much will not serve my purpose.

2. In the Plural Number they mostly refer to persons only.

कितने तो सभा में न आसके Several people could not come to the meeting.

3. इतना, उतना, कितना, जितना, in the locative case expresses time, price and quantity. e.g.

इतने में वह वहाँ आ पहुँचा Meanwhile he reached there.

यह घोड़ा कितने में दोगे ? How much do you demand for this horse ?

जितने में उसने जमीन खरीदी उतने में मैं भी खरीदता

I also would have bought the land for the price he had bought it.

4. ऐसा and वैसा may be used in the sense of Cardinal Pronouns यह and वह

ऐसा हो सकता है This is quite possible.

वैसा नहीं हो सकता है That is not possible.

### AS ADJECTIVES

5. As Adjectives they are subject to inflexion, e.g.

कितनी बड़ी पोथी ! What a big book !

कैसी भोली लड़की ! How innocent is the girl !

ऐसी अँधेरी रात में ! In such a dark night !

As Adverbs they are generally inflected to ए  
तुम कैसे आये How did you come ?

### OTHER PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

ऊनेक	several, many.
अमुक	a certain person.
और	another.
अन्य	other, different, another.
पराया, दूसरा	"
सारा समूचा	all, the whole
सब के सब	all, the whole lot.
एक	a or, one, person or thing.
प्रत्येक	each one.
बहुतेरा	many
आदि	and the other, the rest.
इत्यादि	etc.

### EXERCISES

1. Translate into English.

आप इतना डरते क्यों हैं ?

उसे कितना रुपया रोज़ मिलता है ?

पुस्तकालय में सब कितनी पुस्तकें होंगी ?

किसने ऐसा किया है ?

यह आम का पेड़ कैसा है ?

ऐसा बदमाश लड़का यहाँ कोई नहीं है ?  
 कल सभा में कितने लोग आये थे ।  
 आज कैसा सुंदर दिन है ?  
 इतने अच्छे अंगूर हम ने कभी नहीं खाये ।  
 यह बाजा आपको कितने में मिला ।

Translate into Hindi:—

How much are you ready to pay for it ?

What sort of man is he ?

I cannot find such a friend as you.

What a lovely night this is !

Meanwhile a man came there.

How many books have you read in Hindi ?

What kind is this house ?

We never saw such sweet-meats before.

How much is he getting every month ?

Why are you trembling so much ?



## CHAPTER VI

### PARTICIPLES

#### LESSON 26.

### PARTICIPLES

#### Principle Parts of the Verb.

Hindi verbs have four principle parts.

1. The Infinitive ends in ना as in पढ़ना to read देखना to see, आना to come.
2. The Root ( Stem ) drops the last ना of the Infinitive : —

पढ़ना	—	पढ़	read
देखना	—	देख	see
आना	—	आ	come

3. The Imperfect ( Present ) Participle adds ता to the root :—

पढ़	—	पढ़ता	reading
देख	—	देखता	seeing
आ	—	आता	coming

4. The Perfect ( Past ) Participle adds आ to the root if it ends in a consonant :—

देख	—	देखा	saw, seen
पढ़	—	पढ़ा	read

ii) But adds या to the root if it ends in a vowel :—

आ	आया	came, come
सो	सोया	slept
खा	— खाया	ate, eaten

( iii ) Some Perfect Participles are formed irregularly.

VERB	PERFECT PARTICIPLE	
	MAS,	FEM.
जाना to go	गया went, gone	गई
करना to do	किया did, done	की
होना to be	हुवा been	हुई
लेना to take	लिया took taken	ली
देना to give	दिया gave, given	दी

### EXERCISES

1. Give the stems of the तोड़ना to break, हाँकना to drive. गाना to sing, जलाना to light.
2. What are the Imperfect Participles of चढ़ना to climb, बैठना to sit, थूकना to spit, ठहरना to stay.
3. Form Perfect Participle from फैलना to spread, चुराना to steal, बेचना to sell, काम करना to work, भिगोना to wet, फाड़ना to tear.



## INTRANSITIVE

Verb	Root	Imperfect Participle	Perfect Participle
आना	to come	आ	आया
चलना	to move	चल	चला
जाना	to go	जा	गया
सोना	to sleep	सो	सोया
रोना	to cry	रो	रोया
बैठना	to sit	बैठ	बैठा
दौड़ना	to run	दौड़	दौड़ा
खेलना	to play	खेल	खेला
गिरना	to lall	गिन	गिना
होना	to be	हो	हुआ
हंसना	to laugh	हंस	हंसा
उठना	to rise	उठ	उठा
ठहरना	to stay	ठहर	ठहरा
तैरना	to swim	तैर	तरा
चढ़ना	to climb	चढ़	चढ़ा
चमकना	to shine	चमक	चमका
नाचना	to dance	नाच	नाचा
कूदना	to jump	कूद	कूदा
लेटना	to lie	लेट	लेटा
थूकना	to spit	थूक	थूका

**TRANSITIVE**

Verb		Root	Imperfect Participle	Perfect Participle
खाना	to eat	खा	खाता	खाया
करना	to do	कर	करता	किया
देखना	to see	देख	देखता	देखा
पढ़ना	to read	पढ़	पढ़ता	पढ़ा
लिखना	to write	लिख	लिखता	लिखा
पीना	to drink	पी	पीता	पीया
पहनना	to put on	पहन	पहनता	पहना
मारना	to beat	मार	मारता	मारा
धोना	to wash	धो	धोता	धोया
पकड़ना	to catch	पकड़	पकड़ता	पकड़ा
देना	to give	दे	देता	दिया
सीखना	to learn	सीख	सीखता	सीखा
भेजना	to send	भेज	भेजता	भेजा
गाना	to sing	गा	गाना	गाया
चुराना	to steal	चुरा	चुराता	चुराया
ढोना	to carry	ढो	ढोता	ढोया
सीना	to sew	सी	सीता	सीया
खोदना	to dig	खोद	खोदता	खोदा
काटना	to cut	काट	काटता	काटा
सुनना	to hear	सुन	सुनता	सुना

## LESSON 27

## USES OF PARTICIPLES.

In Hindi the Imperfect Participle is used in a sentence to qualify ( i ) a Noun ( ii ) an Adjective and ( iii ) a verb.

**1. To Qualify a Noun :**

It is not very common to use a Participle as a Noun but some times we find this use in phrases. e. g,

बना बनाया ready made

सुनी सुनाई बात hear-say, rumour

किये का फल (lit. fruit of action)  
reward or penalty of action.

**2. To Qualify an Adjective :**

As an Adjective it agrees with the Noun in Number and Gender and usually followed by हुआ, हुए or हुई as the case may be e.g.

रोता हुआ बालक a crying child.

दौड़ती हुई गाड़ी a running train.

मरा हुआ कुत्ता a dead dog.

फले हुये पेड़ trees laden with fruits.

**3 To Qualify a Verb :**

As a Verb it is used in Adverbial clauses

To express condition or state and agrees with the Noun it qualifies :

एक लड़का खेलता हुआ किसी जङ्गल के पास जा निकला

A boy reached near a forest PLAYING.

वहाँ उसने एक जोड़े जूते पड़े हुए देखे

There he saw a pair of shoes LYING ABOUT.

**USE OF बिना (WITHOUT) AND ही (ON THE POINT OF)**

### 1. USE OF बिना

बिना is used with a Perfect Participle ( in inflected form ) e.g.

बिना पूछे without having asked.

बिना देखे " " seen,

बिना कहे " " said,

### 2. USE OF ही

2. The imperfect Participle in (inflected form) with ही means 'on the point of'. The subject of the Participle uses the Post-position का ( Genitive case ) : Such sentences should be translated by such phrases as "no sooner" and "as soon as"

मास्टर साहब के आते ही लड़के चुप हो गए

As soon as the teacher came the boys became quite,

## REPETITION OF PARTICIPLES

Sometimes an imperfect Participle, (in inflected form) is repeated when used in a sentence :

लड़की दौड़ती दौड़ती चली आई A girl came running.  
 लड़के दौड़ते दौड़ते चले आये Boys came running.

WITHOUT ADDING हुआ ETC.

Sometimes an Imperfect Participle is used without adding हुआ, हुए; or हुई.

लड़की दौड़ती चली आई A girl came running  
 लड़के दौड़ते चले आये Boys came running.  
 लड़का दौड़ता चला आया A boy came running.

### EXERCISES

2. Translate into English—

१. एक मरा हुआ कुत्ता सड़क पर पड़ा था ।
२. हम सब खेलते खेलते थक गये हैं ।
३. सीलीगोड़ी के पासदो आदमी दौड़ती हुई गाड़ीसे कूद पड़े
४. सिपाही लाल पगड़ी पहने हुए थे ।
५. उसको रुपयों से भरी हुई थैली मिली ।
६. गुरु जी कुर्सी पर बैठे लिखते थे ।
७. लड़के अपने अपने बस्ते लिये हुए स्कूल में जा रहे थे
८. गुरु जी के कमरे में आते ही सब लड़के खड़े हो गये ।
९. बहते हुए पानी में नहाना चाहिए ।
- १० बिना पूछे भीतर मत आओ ।

1. Translate in to Hindi—

1. A dead tiger is lying on the ground.
2. Wash it in the flowing water.

3. Take ten rupees out of the bag which is open.
4. As soon as he saw me he ran away.
5. My brother was reading a book lying on his bed.
6. Don't touch a dead dog.
7. He got up as soon as I went there.
8. He jumped out of the running train.
9. Don't go out without asking me. (my permission)
10. I gave him a book without his asking.

## LESSON 28.

### The Conjunctive Participle.

The Conjunctive Participle is known in Hindi Grammar as पूर्व कालिक क्रिया--the Verb which deals with the past tense. It economises the use of Verbs and simplifies what English is expressed at greater length. There are four forms :

- (1) कर (Kar) is added to the root जा+कर=जाकर  
=Having gone
- (2) के (Ke) „ „ जा+के=जाके
- (3) करके (Karke) „ „ जा+करके=जाकरके
- (4) Sometimes it is identical with the root of the Verb.

जा Having gone

खा Having eaten.

### Uses of Conjunctive Participle

The Conjunctive Participle is used :

1. When two sentences are joined by the Conjunction 'and' in English :

He rose and went away. वह उठ कर चला गया

2. When Adverbial Clause of time English e. g. :

When he saw me, he called me  
मुझ को देखकर उसने मुझे बुलाया ।

3. When Imperfect Participle or Gerund is used in English :

He reading a book sitting on a chair,  
वह कुर्सी पर बैठकर पुस्तक पढ़ रहा है ।

4. When Adverbial Phrases are used in English :

Kindly	दया कर के
Secretly	छिपकर के

### EXERCISES

- 1 Translate into English :

१ वह सबरे उठकर पुस्तक पढ़ता है ।

२ हेडमास्टर को देखकर लड़के काँपने लगे ।

३ लड़कियाँ मैदान में जाकर खेलने लगीं ।

४ बबर्ची ने रोटी पकाकर बच्चों को खिलाई ।

५ हम जंगल में जाकर लकड़ी बटोरेंगे ।

६ उसकी बहिन ने एक चिट्ठी लिखकर दिली भेजी ।

७ पढ़ने के बाद सब खा पीकर सो गये ।

2 Translate into Hindi :

1. Open your book and read,

2. Write the letter and post it.

3. They went out and played.

4. They cooked and ate the rice.

5. I sat at the table to eat my dinner.

6. Will you go to your teacher and ask.

7. He came and helped me.

## LESSON 29.

### Infinitives

1. The Infinitive may denote either Present or Past Tense. It has the characteristics of a Noun and a Verb. Like other Nouns it is declined in all the cases in Singular only except the Vocative Cases.

**Nom.** राम का पढ़ना अच्छा है । Ram's reading is good.

**Acc.** मैं राम का पढ़ना सुनता हूँ । I hear Ram's reading

**Inst** राम पढ़ने से पंडित हो गया Ram became learned by reading.

**Dat.** राम पढ़ने के लिये आया है Ram has come to read.



- Abl.** राम पढ़ने से भागता है Ram shirks reading.  
*(lit. runs away from reading).*
- Gen.** राम के पढ़ने का ढंग अच्छा है Ram's style of  
 reading is good.
- Loc.** राम पढ़ने में अच्छा है Ram is good at reading.
- Note.**--Sometimes को and के लिये are omitted as  
 राम पढ़ने आया है; वह खाने आया है etc.

2. The Infinitive with the Postposition पर, when used with the Verb होना (*to be*), means either finishing a thing or action which is about to take place e.g.

मेरे आने पर वह आया	He came after me.
राम पढ़ने पर था	Ram was just on the point of reading.

3. As a Verb it is used as an Imperative
- |                 |                          |
|-----------------|--------------------------|
| रात को मत पढ़ना | Do not read in the night |
| शराब मत पीना    | Do not drink wine.       |

**Note.**--As compared with the ordinary form of the Imperative it expresses an advice rather than a command.

4. If it is used with चाहिए, होना or पढ़ना it expresses an obligation or necessity.
- |                  |               |
|------------------|---------------|
| मुझे पढ़ना चाहिए | I should read |
|------------------|---------------|

उसको पढ़ना पड़ा      He had to read  
तुमको पढ़ना होगा      You shall have to read

EXERCISES

1. Translate into English :

- १ मैं स्टेशन पर जाने के लिए आया हूँ ।
- २ कलकत्ता की गाड़ी छूटने पर है ।
- ३ फिर यहाँ कभी मत आना ।
- ४ हरि घोड़े पर चढ़ना पसंद करता है ।
- ५ लिली के पढ़ने पर शीला पढ़ने लगी ।
- ६ मैंने उसे जाने को कहा ।
- ७ अब देर करना अच्छा नहीं ।
- ८ मैं खिड़की पर टिकट खरीदने गया ।
- ९ तुमको अब सोना चाहिये ।
- १० सब लड़कों को यह लिखना पड़ेगा ।

2. Translate into Hindi :

1. I heard the ringing of the bell.
2. I must go now.
3. He is ready to go to the station.
4. He was about to come to my house.
5. The boy shirks reading.
6. My brother is good at writing.
7. You will have to do it.
8. They wish to learn Hindi.
9. He has gone to buy a new book.
10. I hear the reading of the children.



## CHAPTER VII.

### VERBS

#### LESSON 30

#### Verbs ( क्रिया )

Two main kinds of Verbs.

Principal Verbs ( as distinguished from auxiliary  
होना to be are divided into two main classes :

- (1) Transitive Verbs (with objects) सकर्मक
- (2) Intransitive Verbs (without objects) अकर्मक

In sentences like मेरा पिता सोता है My father is  
sleeping; कुत्ता भौकता है dog barks, each of the Verbs  
with its subject makes a complete statement. But  
there are many groups of words like—

1. The man eats आदमी.....खाता है
2. The thief stole चोर ने.....चुराया
3. He opens वह.....खोलता है

where the verb does not by itself make up a complete  
pradication, but requires some objects  
like (1) bread रोटी (2) my money (मेरा पैसा)

(3) the door ( दरवाजा ) to make the sentence complete.

The sentences in the former group are Intransitive and the latter are Transitive.

### Two Objects ( द्विकर्मक )

Sometimes Verbs take two Objects :

"I gave him one rupee.

मैं ने उस को एक रुपया दिया

Intransitive		Transitive	
होना	to be	खाना	to eat
सोना	to sleep	पीना	to drink
जागना	to wake	जाना	to go
बढ़ना	to grow	पकड़ना	to catch
मरना	to die	पढ़ना	to read
जीना	to live	पहनना	to wear
रोना	to cry	धोना	to wash
खेलना	to play	करना	to do
चमकना	to shine	पकना	to cook
गिरना	to fall	लिखना	to write
जलना	to burn	देखना	to see
जागना	to raise	बुलाना	to call

## EXERCISES

1. Read the following sentences and say what Verbs are Transitive and what are Intransitive in each Case.

राम बन को जाता है ।

शीला घर में सोती है ।

रमेश कपड़े पहनता है ।

नाई इजाजत बनाता है ।

लड़के गुल्ली डंडा खेल रहे हैं ।

आज उसका भाई यहाँ आया था ।

यह मेज लकड़ी की बनी हुई है ।

मेरे बाबू जी मेरे लिए एक गेंद लाये हैं ।

2. Fill up the blanks.

लड़का.....पीता है ।

लड़कियाँ.....बुन रही हैं ।

शेर ने.....मार डाला ।

बिलियम ने.....मोल ली है ।

हम.....घो डालेंगे ।

मैंने कल.....लाया ।

## LESSON 31.

Verb, Moods, Tenses, Number, Person, Gender.

Moods. There is no equivalent for Mood in Hindi

Grammar. There are Moods but the Tenses are not arranged with reference to any Mood.

## VERBS, MOODS, TENSES, NUMBER, Person, Gender 121

**Tenses.** In Hindi tense means काव. There are three main Tenses like English i. e. Present, Past and Future. Generally हैं (is) हैं (are) are used with the Present Tense था or थी (was) or थे or थीं (were) or only Perfect Participles such as आया (came), गया (went) with the Past Tense; and गा. गे, गी with the Future Tense.

**Number.** The Hindi Verb has two Numbers, Singular and Plural.

. There are three Persons, i. e. first second and third.

**First Person** is the person speaking मैं I,  
हम we,

**Second** ,, is the person spoken to  
तू thou, तुम you,

**Third** ,, is the person spoken about  
वह he, she and it; वे they

**GENDER.** There are two Genders Masculin and Feminine. In most parts of the Verb. the form is affected by Number. Person and Gender. It is important to remember that English Verbs have no Gender but Hindi

**Verbs always change their Gender with the Nouns they qualify.**

Thus लड़का जाता है A boy is going

But लड़की जाती है A girl is going.

### EXERCISE

1. Translate the following sentences into English and point out the Gender of the Verbs

वह पढ़ता है ।

वह पढ़ता होगा ।

लड़की पढ़ती थी ।

हम घर जावेंगे ।

वे अपने घर गये ।

वे आदमी रोटी खाते थे ।

मैंने बहुत लड्डू खाये हैं ।

लड़कियाँ दौड़ेंगी ।

बैल कहाँ चरता था ?

वे खेल में हैं ।



## LESSON 32.

## Imperfect Tenses.

## Auxiliary Verb होना -to be

## Present Tense (both Genders)

Person	Singular	Plural
1st	मैं हूँ I am	हम हैं we are
2nd	तू है thou art	तुम हो you are
3rd	वह है he, she, it, is	व हैं they are

## Past Tense

Person	Singular		Plural	
	Mas.	Fem.	Mas.	Fem.
1st	मैं था,	थी I was	हम थे.	थीं we were
2nd	तू था,	थी thou wert	तुम थे,	थीं you were
3rd	वह था,	थी he she	वे थे,	थीं they were
		and it was		

1. The Present Imperfect Tense is formed by adding to the Imperfect Participle the Present Tense of the Auxiliary Verb होना (to be)
2. The Past Imperfect Tense is formed by adding to the Imperfect Participle the Past Tense of the Auxiliary Verb था (was)
3. When in agreement with a Feminine Noun the forms are जाती हूँ, जाती थी .



## Present Imperfect Tense

Person	Ma-culine		Feminine	
	Sing.	Plural	Sing.	Plural
1st	मैं जाता हूँ I am going	हम जाते हैं We are going	मैं जाती हूँ I am going	हम जाती हैं We are going
2nd	तू जाता है Thou art going	तुम जाते हो You are going	तू जाती है Thou art going	तुम जाती हो You are going
3rd	वह जाता है He is going	वे जाते हैं They are going	वह जाती है She is going	वे जाती हैं They were going

## Past Imperfect Tense

1st	मैं जाता था I was going	हम जाते थे We were going	मैं जाती थी I was going	हम जाती थीं We were going
2nd	तू जाता था Thou were going	तुम जाते थे You were going	तू जाती थी Thou were going	तुम जाती थीं You were going
3rd	वह जाता था He was going	वे जाती थीं They were going	वह जाती थी She was going	वे जाते थे They were going

## EXERCISE

1. Say the Present Tense and the Past Tense of होना (to be)
2. Write out the Present Imperfect Tense of the Verb. आना ( to come ), पढ़ना ( to read ), खेलना to play; in the Masculine and खाना ( to eat ), दौड़ना (to run ) and जाना ( to go ) in the Feminine.
3. Translate into Hindi:-
  1. Two boys are going.
  2. The woman is coming.
  3. Dogs are barking.
  4. They were reading.
  5. She is speaking.
  6. The birds are flying.
  7. They are oxen.
  8. You are writing.
  9. Thou art going.
  10. The loaves on the table.
  11. Those girls were reading.
  12. He puts on clean clothes.

## LESSON 33.

## Perfect Tenses.

## ( Intransitive Verbs )

Tenses formed from the Perfect Participles are called *Perfect Tenses*.

1. The Present Perfect Tense is formed by

adding the Auxiliary Verb होना (to be) to the Perfect Participle as मैं आया हूँ I have come.

2. **The Past Perfect Tense** is formed by adding था (was) to the Perfect Participle as मैं आया था I had come.
3. **The Past Indefinite** is formed Without adding any other Verb to the Perfect Participle as मैं आया I came.
4. **When in agreement with a Feminine Noun** the forms are आयी हूँ, आयी थी and आयी

### Present Perfect Tense

आना to come

Person	Masculine		Feminine	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
1st	मैं आया हूँ I have come	हम आये हैं We have come	मैं आयी हूँ I have come	हम आयी हैं We have come
2nd	तू आया है Thou hast come	तुम आये हो You have come	तू आयी है Thou hast come	तुम आयी हो You have come
3rd	वह आया है He has come	वे आये हैं They have come	वह आयी है She has come	वे आयी हैं They have come

Past Perfect Tense

आना (to come)

Person	Masculine		Feminine	
	Sing.	Plural	Sing.	Plural
1st	मैं आया था I had come	हम आये थे We had come	मैं आयी थी I had come	हम आयी थीं We had come
2nd	तू आया था Thou hadst come	तुम आये थे You had come	तू आयी थी Thou hadst come	तुम आयी थीं You had come
3rd	वह आया था He had come	वे आये थे They had come	वह आयी थी She had come	वे आयी थीं They had come

Past Indefinite

1st	मैं आया I came	हम आये We came	मैं आयी I came	हम आयीं We came
2nd	तू आया Thou camest	तुम आये You came	तू आयी Thou camest	तुम आयीं You came
3rd	वह आया He came	वे आये They came	वह आयी She came	वे आयीं They came

## EXERCISES

## 1. Translate into English. (Oral)

- १ मोहन अपनी जगह पर बैठ गया ।
- २ वह अपनी जगह पर बैठ गया ।
- ३ मैं कल नौ बजे रात को सोया था ।
- ४ उसका मकान गिर गया है ।
- ५ वह अपने घर का रास्ता भूल गया ।
- ६ कल वह सारे दिन सोया ।
- ७ वह लड़का रो रहा था ।
- ८ उस पेड़ की डाली पर बंदर बैठे हैं ।
- ९ नौकर मेरा खाना लाया ।
- १० सात सिपाही यहाँ आये हैं ।

## 2. Translate into Hindi:

1. I had come.
2. You have gone.
3. The children have cried.
4. The king went there.
5. A soldier came here yesterday.
6. A boy has fallen.
7. I forgot your name.
8. He had run seven times.
9. The boy played under that tree.
10. I sat on the branch of that tree.

## LESSON 34

**Conjugation of Transitive Verbs.**

Mr. A. W. McMillan writes in his 'Hindustani Hand Book'. "This Conjugation of Transitive Verb is wholly different from anything in the Grammar of European languages and requires close attention by the student."

"This particular lesson may prove a difficult one, but it is of outstanding importance. Patient mastery of verbal irregularities and the differences between Intransitive and Transitive are essential. Let there be no carelessness here. The student must aim at special accuracy in this class of Verbs and once the habit is formed, no effort of memory is required."

The Conjugation of Transitive Verbs differs from that of Intransitive Verbs only in the Present and Past Perfect Tenses: otherwise it is the same

When a Transitive Verb is in the Perfect Tense the Subject takesने with it and the 3rd Person Pronoun is changed thus:

मैंने	हमने
तूने	तुमने .
उसने	उन्होंने

## पढ़ना "to read"

## Indefinite Perfect "read"

	Singular	Plural
1st Person	मैंने पढ़ा I read	हमने पढ़ा We read
2nd „	तूने पढ़ा Thou readest	तुमने पढ़ा You read
3rd „	उसने पढ़ा He read	उन्होंने पढ़ा They read

## Present Perfect 'have read'

1st Person	मैंने पढ़ा है I have read	हमने पढ़ा है We have read
2nd „	तूने पढ़ा है Thou hast read	तुमने पढ़ा है You have read
3rd „	उसने पढ़ा है He has read	उन्होंने न पढ़ा है They have read

## Past Perfect 'had read'

1st Person	मैंने पढ़ा था I had read	हमने पढ़ा था We had read
2nd „	तूने पढ़ा था Thou hast read	तुमने पढ़ा था You had read
3rd „	उसने पढ़ा था He had read	उन्होंने पढ़ा था They had read

*Agreement*

In Hindi sometimes the Object takes को ( ko ) and sometimes it does not take को । In the former case the Verb agrees with the Object in Number and Gender and in the latter case it takes the form of the Masculine Singular. If the Object is in the Plural, पढ़ा will be changed into पढ़ें in the Plural Number and पढ़ी in the Feminine Gender.

EXERCISES

1. Translate into English : (oral)

- १ मैंने अभी मुंह धोया है।
- २ लीला ने दूध खाया है।
- ३ रहीमने अपना पाठ याद कर लिया है।
- ४ कल बड़े जोरसे हवा चली ।
- ५ उन्होंने एक कुंवा खोदा ।
- ६ उसने अपनी लालटेन जलाई ।
- ७ लड़के नदीमें तरे ।
- ८ हमने इन सब पुस्तकों को पढ़ा है ।
- ९ शीलाने मुझको एक चिट्ठा लिखी थी।
- १० कल उसने बड़ा अच्छा गाना गाया।

2. Answer in Hindi : (oral)

- १ क्या वालियम स्कूल आया ?
- २ क्या तुमने यह पुस्तक पढ़ी ?



- ३ यह किसने लिखा है ?  
 ४ आज तुमने क्या खाया है ?  
 ५ तुम ने वहाँ क्या देखा ?  
 ६ वह पेड़ पर क्यों चढ़ा ?  
 ७ कल सबेरे तुम कब उठे ?  
 ८ क्या चोर पकड़ा गया ?  
 ९ कलकत्ते में तुम कहाँ ठहरे ?  
 १० इस बाबक को किसने मारा ?

## LESSON 35

## FUTURE TENSE

## Terminations

Person	Singular	Plural
1st	ऊंगा	एंगे
2nd	एगा	ओगे
3rd	एगा	एंगे

The simple Future is formed by adding the personal Terminations mentioned above to the stem of the Verb:—

Verb	Stem	Termination	Future Tense
लिखना	लिख	+ ऊंगा	लिखूंगा

**लिखना (to write) Masculine**

Person	Singular	Plural
1st	मैं लिखूँगा I shall write	हम लिखेंगे We shall write
2nd	तू लिखेगा Thou wilt write	तुम लिखोगे You will write
3rd	वह लिखेगा He will write	वे लिखेंगे They will write

**Feminine**

1st	मैं लिखूँगी I shall write	हम लिखेंगी We shall write
2nd	तू लिखेगी Thou wilt write	तुम लिखोगी You will write
3rd	वह लिखेगी She will write	वे लिखेंगी They will write

**Rule 2** The feminine forms are made by changing **गा** or **गे** to **गी**

**आना (to come) Masculine**

Person	Singular	Plural
1st	मैं आऊँगा I shall come	हम आवेंगे We shall come
2nd	तुम आओगे Thou wilt come	तू आवेगा You will come

Person	Singular	Plural
3rd	वह आवेगा He will come	वह आवेंगे They will come
	<b>Feminine</b>	
1st	मैं आऊंगी I shall come	हम आवेंगी We shall come
2nd	तू आवेगी Thou wilt come	तुम आओगी You will come
3rd	वह आवेगी She will come	वे आवेंगी They will come

Rule 3. When the root ends in a vowel, व or य is inserted before the termination but while writing येगा ए— (e) is generally left out and यगा is written.

#### *Agreement*

In the Future Tense the Verb agrees with the Subject in Number and Gender.

मैं घर आऊंगा	I shall go home
लड़की घर जायेगी	The girl will go home

#### EXERCISES

1. Write out the Future Tense of देखना to see खाना to eat, करना to do and रोना to cry in all Persons and Numbers.

2. Translate into English : (oral)

- १ कल मैं आपके घर आऊंगा ।
- २ हरि मेरे साथ वहाँ जायगा ।
- ३ हम लोग हिन्दी सीखेंगे ।
- ४ सीलीगोड़ी से गाड़ी ना बजे रातमें बूटेगी ।
- ५ मैं आज से रोज़ चार घंटा पढ़ूंगा ।
- ६ वे नदी में नहाने जायेंगे ।
- ७ वह तुमको नदी के पार ले जायगा ।
- ८ क्या तुम दरवाज़ा खोलोगे ?
- ९ उन लड़कियोंकी माँ उनके लिये कपड़े लायगी
- १० अगले महिने में मैं चौदह वर्षका हो जाऊँगा

2. Fill up the blanks using Verbs in the future tense : —

- वे अपने घर.....(जाना to go )  
 वह लड़की पुस्तक.....(पढ़ना to read )  
 मे यह काम .....(करना to do )  
 तुम रोटी .....(खाना to eat )  
 क्या तू वहाँ .....(जाना to go )  
 हम यह खेल.....(खेलना to play )

3. Translate into Hindi :

1. I will go to this house.
2. The poor man will wake up at night.
3. The boys will go to school at 8 A. M
4. Will you read your books ?

5. We shall stay there for two hours.
6. Girls will go to the market.
7. It will rain today.
8. She will come in the evening.
9. The school will remain closed tomorrow.
10. On Saturday there will be a foot-ball match.

## LESSON 36

### Imperative Mood

**Imperative**—A Verb which expresses a command is said to be in the Imperative Mood. This mood is formed by omitting the terminations ( गा-गे-गी-गीं ) of the Future Tense except in the 2nd Person Singular when only the stem is used.

#### Imperative Mood of जाना (to go) Both Genders.

Person	Singular	Plural
1st	मैं जाऊँ Let me go	हम जावें Let us go.
2nd	तू जा Go.	तुम जाओ Go.
3rd	वह जावे Let him go.	वे जावें Let them go.
<b>पढ़ना (to read) Both Genders.</b>		
1st	मैं पढ़ूँ Let me read	हम पढ़ें Let us read.
2nd	तू पढ़. Read	तुम पढ़ो Read.
3rd	वह पढ़े Let him read	वे पढ़ें Let them read.

Rule 1. If the stem of a Verb ends in a Vowel as in the case of जाना-जा the Verb will be conjugated like जाना.

Rule 2. But if the stem of a Verb ends in a Consonant as in पढ़ना-पढ़ it will be Conjugated like पढ़ना.

### EXERCISES

1. Translate into English :

- १ जाओ, अगना मुह धाओ ।
- २ उस आदमी को यहां बुलाओ ।
- ३ चलो, तैरने चलें ।
- ४ इस लड़के को ठंडा पानी पिलाओ ।
- ५ अपनी पुस्तक यहां लाओ ।
- ६ सोमवार तक यहां रहो ।
- ७ थोड़े से प्याले और लाओ ।
- ८ चलो, हम सब घूमने चलें ।
- ९ कभी झूठ मत बोलो ।
- १० जाकर दरवाजा बंद करो ।

2. Translate into Hindi :

1. Let us go for a walk.
2. Give this poor woman one pice,
3. (3) to Calcutta tomorrow.
- 4 Do not bring more cups.

5. Call this girl here.
6. Go and wash your hands.
7. Let us go home now.
8. Do not sit here.
9. Write a letter to your father.
10. Tell the truth.

## LESSON 37

### Contingent Future or Subjunctive Mood

“The Contingent Future ‘denotes a future action as conditioned or contingent’— Kellog ? where as the absolute future is used when the future action is regarded as a certainty”, —Dann.

This Tense is formed by omitting the termination of the Future Tense, i.e. गा-गे-गी गी.

#### देखना (to see) Both Genders

Person	Singular	Plural
1st मैं देखूँ (If) I should see	हम देखें (If) We should see.	
2nd तू देखे (") Thou shouldst see.	तुम देखो You should see.	
3rd वह देखे (") He should see.	वे देखें They should see.	

जाना ( to go )

Person	Singular	Plural
1st	मैं जाऊँ (If) I should go,	हम जवें (If) We should go.
2nd	तू जाएँ (") Thou shouldst go	तुम जाओ (") You should go.
3rd	वह जाएँ (") He should go.	वे जावें (") They should go

**Contingent and Presumptive Imperfect and Perfect**

1	{	<b>Contingent Imperfect</b>	मैं आता होऊँ । I may be coming.
		<b>Perfect</b>	मैं आया होऊँ । I may have come.
2	{	<b>Presumptive Imperfect</b>	वह आता होगा He must be coming.
		<b>Perfect</b>	वह आया होगा He must have come.
3	{	<b>Past Contingent</b>	जो तुम आते होते Had you been coming.
		<b>Imperfect</b>	जो तुम आये न होते If you had not come

1. The Contingent Imperfect and Perfect,

Add Contingent Future of the Verb होना to the Imperfect and Perfect Participle.

मैं आया+होऊँ ।

मैं आता+होऊँ ।



2. Add the absolute future of **होना** to the Participles when the idea of presumption or strong probability is expressed.

**वह आता + होगा or आया + होगा**

3. Add the indefinite Imperfect to the Participles

**तुम आते+होते or तुम आये होते ।**

**"The Past Conjugent Tenses, therefore, signify an action which might possibly have happened but did not happen and in consequence other things contingent upon it could not take place."** —Dann

### CO-RELATIVES

Hindi idiom requires the use of a co-relative to express a condition. The following list of the co-relatives will be usefull for reference.

जब when	तब then
यदि, जो, अगर if	तो then
जो who, which	सो that
जहाँ where	वहाँ or तहाँ there
जिधर whither	तिधर thither
जैसा as	वैसा or तैसा so
ज्योंही no sooner,	त्योंही then
as soon as	

ज्यों ज्यों as, more	त्यों त्यों so; more
यद्यपि although	तथापि even then
जितना howevr much	उतना that much

## EXERCISE

1. Translate into English:—

- १ यदि मैं उसको यहाँ बुलाता तो वह आता ।
- २ जो वह मछली पकड़े तो मुझको बताओ ।
- ३ अगर धूप निकली होती तो कपड़े सूख गये होते ।
- ४ ज्यों ही घंटा बजा त्यों ही गाड़ी चल दी ।
- ५ जैसा करोगे ( बोओने ) वैसा पाओगे ( काटोगे ) ।
- ६ क्या मैं उस भिखारी को पैसा दूँ ?

७ ज्योंज्यों पानीबरसता था त्योंत्यों लड़कियाँ जाड़ेसे काँपती थीं ।

- ८ जब मैं घर जाऊंगा तो तुम्हें कह दूंगा ।
- ९ यद्यपि वह बड़ा धनी है तथापि वह बड़ा कंजूस है ।
- १० क्या वे अब पाठशाला जावें ?

Translate into Hindi:—

1. If the boy should fall, raise him (use जो तो)
2. No sooner had he come, than I called him.  
( ज्योंही, त्योंही )
3. I went when he came ( use जब, तब )
4. Although he is a miser he will give you one pice ( यद्यपि. तथापि )

5. What shall we eat ?
6. If the beggar comes, give him one pice.  
( यदि, तो )
7. The more it rained, the more the boys shivered with cold ( ज्यों-ज्यों, त्यों-त्यों )
8. What shall we put on ?
9. Forbid him to come
10. What ! Shall I tell a lie ?

## LESSON 38

### Continuous or Progressive Tenses

The continuous Tenses are formed by using रहा along with the root of the principal Verb. This Tense is used when the continuance of the action is described.

#### Present Continuous

जाना to go

#### Masculine

Person	Singular	Plural
First	मैं जा रहा हूँ I am going	हम जा रहे हैं We are going
Second	तू जा रहा है Thou art going	तुम जा रहे हो You are going

Person	Singular	Plural
Third	वह जा रहा है He is going	वे जा रहे हैं They are going

**Past Continuous**

First	मैं जा रही थी I was going	हम जा रहे थे We were going
Second	तू जा रहा था Thou wert going	तुम जा रहे थे You were going
Third	वह जा रहा था He was going	वे जा रहे थे They were going

**Future Continuous**

First	मैं जा रहा हूँगा I shall be going	हम जा रहे होंगे We shall be going
Second	तू जा रहा होगा Thou wilt be going	तुम जा रहे होंगे You will be going
Third	वह जा रहा होगा He will be going	वे जा रहे होंगे They will be going

Note 1.—There is an alternate form of the Future Continuous.

मैं जाता रहूँगा I shall be going      हम जाते रहेंगे  
We shall be going

The Feminine Forms are:

मैं जा रही हूँ I am going  
मैं जा रही थी I was going  
मैं जा रही हूँगी I shall be going

## LESSON 36

## 1. Translate into English : (oral)

- १ उसका भाई भोजन कर रहा था ।
- २ लड़के मदान में खेल रहे थे ।
- ३ सूरज डूब रहा है ।
- ४ कल से पानी बरस रहा है ।
- ५ लड़कियां पढ़ रही होंगी ।
- ६ मैं दो बरस से इसी घर में रहता हूँ ।
- ७ हम लोग बात चीत कर रहे थे ।
- ८ उस आम के पेड़ पर कौए बोल रहे थे ।
- ९ मछुए मछलियाँ पकड़ रहे होंगे ।
- १० नौकर दरवाजा बंद कर रहा था ।

## 2. Translate into Hindi :

1. Edward is engaged in reading.
2. Four girls were coming along singing.
3. Tomorrow I shall be going to meet my friend.
4. The fisherman were catching the fish.
5. He was buying oranges
6. The boys are carrying loads
7. I am going to a house nearby.
8. I had been studying in this school for the last two years.
9. They will be cooking their food.
- 10 I am talking to a friend of mine.

# LESSON 39

## Revision of Tenses

### A Short Paradigm of the Hindi Verb.

	Intransitive	Transitive
Influitive or Gerund	गिरना	करना
Imperfect Participle	गिरता	करता
Perfect	गिरा	किया
Conjunctive	गिर, के, कर	कर, के, कर
Noun of Agency	गिरने वाला	करने वाला

**Tenses from the Root ( गिर and कर ) 3rd. Sing. is given with one exception (Imperative)**

Contingent future	वह गिरे	वह करे
Imperative (2nd Person Plural)	तुम गिरो	तुम करो
Future	वह गिरेगा	वह करेगा

### Tenses from the Imperfect Participle.

Indefinite Imperfect	वह गिरता	वह करता
Present	” ” है	” ” है
Past	” ” था	” ” था
Contingent	” ” हो	” ” हो

	Intransitive	Transitive
Presumptive Imperfect	वह गिरता होगा	वह करता होगा
Past conti.	" " होता	" " होता

### Tenses from the Perfect Participle

Indefinite Perfect	वह गिरा	उसन ।क.या
Present	" " है	" " है
Past	" " था	" " था
Contingent	" " हो	" " हो
Presumptive	" " होगा	" " होगा
Past Con.	" " होता	" " होता

### Syntax of the Verb.

1. All the verbs agree with the Subject (except those which take ने with them) in Number and Gender e.g.

कुत्ता पूँछ हिलाता है ।

लड़कियाँ चली गईं ।

घोड़े दौड़ ।

घोड़ा दौड़ा ।

बालक पढ़ते हैं ।

लड़का पढ़ता है ।

2. If the Subject is in the Agentive case (i.e. it takes ने) and the Object is without को the Verb

agrees with the Subject in Number and Gender

पिता ने लड़कियों का देखा है ।

माता न लड़कों को देखा है ।

उस स्त्री ने बच्चे को मारा ।

उसने कई घर बनवाये ।

If there is **ने** with the Subject and **को** with the Object the Verb takes the form of the Masculine Singular

उसने एक घर बनवाया ।

लड़कियों ने दस आम खाये ।

मैंने रोटी खायी ।

## EXERCISES

1. Translate into Hindi :

1. I am Coming.
2. I was coming.
3. I came.
4. I have come.
5. I had come.
6. come here.
8. ( If ) I should come.
9. ( If ) I had come.



10. I was about to come.
11. I came and went away.
2. Translate into Hindi :
1. They ( Fem. ) went.
  2. My sisters will go.
  3. If he comes tell me at once.
  4. On seeing the house she began to cry.
  5. They saw three women coming towards them.
3. Translate so as to distinguish the meaning between the following pair of sentences.

मैंने एक घर बनाया and मैंने एक घर बनवाया है ।

चोर पकड़ा गया है , उसने चोर को पकड़ लिया है ।

घोबी का गदहा छोटा है , घोबी का एक छोटा गदहा है ।



## CHAPTER VII.

### VERB.

#### LESSON 40

#### CAUSAL VERB

Dr. Kellogg says "The First Causal expresses **immediate causation** and the Second Causal **mediate causation** of the act or state of the primitive." The First Causal is used when there is Causing of something to be done by another and the Second Causal is used when the action is performed by the agency of another ( Third Per: on )

#### Formation of Causal Verbs

##### General Rules

1. **First Causals** are formed by adding **आ** before the **त** of the Infinitive.
2. **Second Causals** are formed by adding **वा** before the Infinitive.

Verb	First Causal	Second causal
गिरना to fall	गिराना to fell, to knock down	गिरवाना to cause one knock another down
उठना to rise	उठाना to raise	उठवाना to cause, to raise
चढ़ना to climb	चढ़ाना to lift up	चढ़वाना
छिपना to be hidden	छिपाना to hide	छिपवाना
पढ़ना to read	पढ़ाना to teach	पढ़वाना
लिखना to write	लिखाना to dictate	लिखवाना
पहिनना to wear	पहिनना to cause to wear	पहिनवाना
पकना to be cooked, to ripe	पकाना to cook	पकवाना
बढ़ना to increase to grow	बढ़ाना to cause to increase	बढ़वाना
कटना to be cut	काटना to cut, bite	कटवाना

2. Certain First Causals are formed by lengthening the vowel of the root of the Verb, while the Second Causals are formed by reverting again to the short vowel with a व added thus:

Verb	First Causal	Sec. Causal
खुलना to be opened	खोलना to open	खुलवाना
पिटना to be beaten	पीटना to thrash	पिटवाना
बधना to be tied	बाँधना to tie, to fasten	बँधवाना
खिंचना to be drawn	खींचना to pull	खिंचवाना
निकलना to come out	निकालना to turn out to extract	निकलवाना
बंटना to be distributed	बाँटना to distribute	बंटवाना
खुदना to be dug	खोदना to dig	खुदवाना
धुलना to be dissolved (for salt, sugar)	घोलना to dissolve	धुलवाना

3. If the root consists of two letters and the first letter is a long vowel, it becomes short in the First Causal being followed by a long vowel. In the Second Causal व is added :

Verb	First Causal	Sec. Causal
जागना to awake	जगाना to arouse	जगवाना
घूमना to go round	घुमाना to turn round	घुमवाना
भागना to flee	भगाना to cause, to flee	भगवाना
बीतना to be passed	बिताना to pass	बितवाना
जोतना to yoke	जुताना to cause, to yoke	जुतवाना
डूबना to sink	डूबाना to submerge	डूबवाना

4. If the root has only one letter with a long vowel, it is made short and **ल** is inserted before the infinitive **ना** of the verb in the First Causal and **लवाना** in the Second Causal.

Verb	First Causal	Sec Causal
रोना to cry	रलाना to make cry	रलवाना
सोना to sleep	सुलाना to cause to sleep	सुलवाना
देना to give	दिलाना to cause to give	दिलवाना
पीना to drink	पिलाना to give drink	पिलवाना
सीना to sew	सिलाना to cause to sew	सिलवाना

**5 Certain Causal Verbs which are irregular.**

Verb	First Causal	Sec. Causal
टूटना to break (intrans)	तोड़ना to break (trans)	तुड़वाना
छूटना to be freed	छोड़ना to free	छुड़वाना to liberate
फूटना to burst	फोड़ना to burst	फुड़वाना
फटना to be torn	फाड़ना to tear	फाड़वाना
बिकना to be sold	बेचना to sell	बिकवाना
रहना to live	रखना to keep	रखवाना
खाना to eat	खिलाना to feed	खिलवाना

## EXERCISE

1. Translate into English:—

- १ शिक्षक लड़कों को भूगोल पढ़ा रहा था ।
- २ मैं आपको यह कह दूंगा पर पिता जी को यह बात नहीं बतलाऊंगा ।
- ३ लहसी ने आप दूध नहीं पिया पर बिल्ली को दूध पिला दिया ।
- ४ उसने स्वयं साँप को नहीं मारा पर नौकर से मरवा दिया ।
- ५ उस बाढ़ ने पहले मेरे भाई को गिराया फिर मैं भी गिर पड़ा ।
- ६ आप अपना कोट दर्जी से सिलवा लीजिए ।
- ७ धाई ने बच्चे को सुला दिया ।
- ८ हजाम से अपने बाल कटवा लो ।
- ९ यदि तुम सबेरे जग जाओ तो सुभ भी जगा दो ।
- १० मैं लड़कों से आज एक चिट्ठी लिखवाऊंगा ।

2. Translate into Hindi :

1. I shall have this letter written by some—body
2. The mother will put the child to sleep.
3. I shall build a house for myself,
4. You have caused the child to cry.
5. The teacher was teaching Hindi
6. Raise him up by the arm
7. I had a coat sewn.
8. The door is open but who opened it ?
9. I shall get that gardener to cut down that tree.
10. Please have my furniture sold.

## LESSON 41

**Passive Voice**

There are two Voices, Active and Passive. Hindi sentences are generally written in the Active Voice but sometimes the Passive is also used.

**The Verb**

1. The Passive Voice is formed by adding the Moods and Tenses of the Verb जाना to the Perfect Participle.

देखना to see

देखा जाना to be seen

करना to do

किया जाना to be done

**The Subject and the Object**

2. When a sentence in the Active Voice is changed into the Passive Voice the original Subject is put in the Instrumental Case ( से ) and the Object in the Nominative Case.

Agreement .

The Verb agrees with the Object in Number and Gender.

**Active**

मैंने राम को देखा

I saw Ram

**Passive**

राम मुझसे देखा गया

Ram was seen by me

**Active**

**Passive**

वह यह काम करता है

काम उससे किय जाता है

He does this work

This work is done by him.

Note—The Passive construction is not very common in Hindi. It is used when the doer of the action is not known or is for any reason not mentioned.

**EXERCISE**

1. Change into the Passive Voice :

१ राम ने कुत्ते को मारा ।

२ तुमने रोटी खायी ।

३ यह चिट्ठी कौन पढ़ेगा ?

४ मैं पुस्तक पढ़ता हूँ ।

५ सिपाही ने चोर को देखा ।

६ यह नाली किसने बनाई थी ?

७ वह कुत्ते को बुलायगा ।

८ मैं उसको प्यार करता हूँ ।

९ हम काम करेंगे ।

१० बिल्ली ने चूहे को मारा है ।

2 Change into the Active Voice :

१ यह घर राज से बनाया गया है ।

२ मेरी बहिन तुमसे देखी गई ।



३ यह नारंगी मुझसे खाया जायगी ।

४ राम से रावण मारा गया ।

५ वह चिट्ठा मुझसे लिखी गई थी ।

## LESSON 42

### COMPOUND VERB

We do not find the Kind of Verb known as the Compound Verb in English but Hindi sentences are full of Compound Verbs 'perhaps the nearest parallel in English to this kind of Compound is in such colloquial phrases as, 'I'll give a look at it, I'll take a walk, I'll have a swim "

- Greaves

**Compound Verb**—When two verbs are joined to give one verbal idea it is called a Compound Verb. We can divide this class of Verbs into three groups. They are :

1. **Compound Verbs formed with the Stem**
2.         "                         "                         **Infinitive**
3.         "                         "                         **Participles**

### GROUP I

#### **Compound Verbs formed with the Stem.**

We can include four kinds of Compound Verbs in this group. The Additional Verbs are added

to the stem of the first Verbs in duly conjugated forms :

**1. Intensive Verbs** (those intensify the meaning of the Verbs).

Verb	Stem	Intensive	Compound Verb
गिरना to fall	गिर	+ पड़ना, गिर पड़ना	to fall down
		जाना, जाना	" "
बोलना to speak	बोल	+ उठना, बोल उठना	to speak out
		पड़ना, पड़ना	" "
उठना to get	उठ	+ बैठना	उठ बैठना to get up
खाना to eat	खा	+ लेना	खा लेना to eat up
मारना to strike	मार	+ डालना	मार डालना to kill
चलना to go	चल	+ पड़ना	चल पड़ना to set out
		देना	" देना
रोना to cry	रा	+ पड़ना	रो पड़ना to burst out
उड़ना to fly	उड़	+ जाना	उड़ जाना to fly away
काटना to cut	काट	+ डालना	काट डालना to cut down
फेंकना to throw	फेंक	+ देना	फक देना
			to throw away
सोना to sleep	सो	+ जाना	सो जाना
			to go to sleep

2. **Potential Verbs** signify ability for an action and are formed by adding “सकना” can (intrans) to the Stem.

करना to do	कर सकना to be able to do
पढ़ना to read	पढ़ सकना " " read.
देखना to see	देख सकना " " see
लिखना to write	लिख सकना " " write

3. **Completive Verb** signify completion of an action and are formed by adding चुकना (intrans) (to finish) to the Stem :

लिखना to write	लिख चुकना to finish writing
करना to do	कर " " doing
कहना to say	कह " " saying

4. **Continuative Verbs** give the idea of continuance of an action and are formed by adding रहना (intrans.) to the Stem :

करना to do	कर रहा है is in the act of doing.
जाना to go	जा रहे थे were actually going

## EXERCISES

1. Translate into English (oral):—

१ क्या तुम हिन्दी में बातचीत कर सकते हो ?

२ बिल्ली ने चूहे को मार डाला ।

३ बेचारा बूढ़ा पेड़ पर से गिर पड़ा ।

४ उस लड़के ने मेरी पुस्तक उठाकर फेंक दी ।

५ माली ने सब बड़े बड़े पेड़ काट डाले ।

६ जब मैं वहाँ पहुँचा तब सब भोजन कर चुके थे ।

७ जब तुम लिख चुको तो मुझे बताना ।

८ क्या तुम यहाँ से सड़क देख सकते हो ?

९ उस समय मैं भोजन कर रहा था ।

१० दर्जी हमारे कपड़े सी रहा है ।

2. Translate into Hindi :

1. I fell down from the tree.

2 My mother is able to write Hindi.

3. Boys were climbing the tree.

4. You can send it by the post.

5. The children were writing with their pens.

6. Yes, I can speak Hindi.

7. They have finished reading.

8. The tailor has finished cutting the cloth.

9. On seeing the thief the girl cried aloud.

10. My brother has arrived in Kalimpong.

## LESSON 43

**COMPOUND VERB****Group II (formed with Infinitives)**

All the Compound Verbs included in this group are formed in **inflected Infinitives**. The additional Verbs can be duly conjugated in each case.

1. **Inceptive Verbs** indicate the commencement of the action. They are formed by adding लगना intrans (to begin) :

मैं पढ़ने लगा I began to read.

वह बोलने लगी She began to speak.

लड़के कांपने लगे The boys began to tremble.

2. **Permissive Verbs** Indicate giving permission. They are formed by adding देना trans. (to give)

मुझे घर जाने दीजिये Please let me go home.

उनको गाना गाने दो Let them sing

उसने मुझे अपनी चिट्ठी पढ़ने दी He allowed me to read his letter.

3. **Acquisitives** signify receiving permission. They are formed by adding पाना (to get) :

बढ़ करने पाया      He was allowed to do.

बढ़ जाने पाया      He was allowed to go.

4. **Compelling Verbs:** show compulsion or obligation. They are formed by adding पड़ना or होना. The Dative Case is used with the Subject.

तुमको यह करना पड़ेगा      You shall have to do this.

”      होगा      ”

उसको वहाँ से भागना पड़ा      He was compelled to run away from there.

## EXERCISES

1. Translate into English:—

१ वहाँ कोई नहीं जाने पाता है ।

२ जाड़े के मारे लड़के काँपने लगे ।

३ क्या आप मुझे एक हफ्ते की छुट्टी देंगे ?

४ मिठाई देखते ही सब लड़के मिठाई मांगने लगे ।

५ मैं कहता हूँ तुम्हें अपना पाठ याद करना होगा ।

६ मुझे राजा साहब से मिलने दीजिए ।

७ अध्यापक ने मुझे घर जाने नहीं दिया ।

८ क्या बढ़ जाने पाया ?

९ पिता जी को मेरे लिये एक नई गाड़ी खरीदनी पड़ेगी ।

१० ज्योंही मैं बोलने लगा त्योंही उसने मुझे रोक दिया ।

**2. Translate into Hindi:**

- 1 Please let the man sit.
- 2 He asked leave to go home but did not get it.
- 3 I had to go out.
- 4 To-morrow the boys will begin to read.
- 5 Seeing me the thief began to run
- 6 He was not allowed to enter that house.
- 7 Please let him off.
- 8 Look here, you will have to learn this by to-morrow.
- 9 Let that girl sit down.
- 10 On hearing the story, boys began to laugh.

**LESSON 44.****COMPOUND VERB****Group III (Verbs formed with Participles)**

There are two kinds of Verbs included in this group. They are Frequentatives and desiratives and are formed with the Perfect and Imperfect Participles.

1. **Frequentatives:** Tell us about habitual or repeated actions that happen frequently or regularly.

Add करना (tran.) to the Perfect Participle.

Note the difference :

मैं जाता हूँ      I go, I am going.

मैं जाता रहता हूँ      I often go.

मैं दूध पीता हूँ I drink milk.

मैं रोज़ दूध पिया करता हूँ ।

I am in the habit of drinking milk every day.

वह करती है She does, She is doing.

वह किया करती है She habitually does (it).

लड़के स्कूल को जा रहे हैं । The boys are going to school.

लड़के स्कूल को जाया करते हैं The boys go to school every day.

Note—जाया is used instead of गया (Perfect Part.) in the Frequentative.

2. **Desiratives:** show a certain action which is about to take place,

Add चाहना (tran.) to wish to the Perfect Participle.

वह खाया चाहता है He is about to eat.

वह बोला चाहता था He was about to speak.

3. **Desiratives** also express the desire to do a certain action.

Add चाहना to the uninflected Infinitives.

क्या तुम जाना चाहते हो Do you want to go?



मैं आपसे मिलना चाहता था I wanted to see (meet) you.

(Students are advised not to speak or write thus. हम जाने (जाना) मांगते हैं for 'I want to go.' They should say मैं जाना चाहता हूँ or हम जाना चाहते हैं।)

4. **Continuatives:** indicate continuance of action and are formed by adding रहना to the Imperfect Participle

लड़के खेलते रहते हैं Boys keep on playing.

5. **Progressive:** express the idea of advance and progression and are formed by adding जाना to the Imperfect Participle.

लड़के खेलते जाते हैं Boys go on playing.

6. **Statics:** indicate motion during the act or state of doing which is described. They are formed by adding हुए to the inflected Imperfect Participle.

लड़के खेलते हुए जाते हैं Boys are going playing along.

Note the difference :

**Continuative** वह पढ़ता रहता है He keeps on reading.

**Progressive** वह पढ़ता जाता है He goes on reading

**Statics** वह पढ़ते हुए जाता है He is going reading along.

**CONTINUATIVE** वह देखती रहती है ।

She keeps on looking.

**PROGRESSIVE** वह देखती जाती है ।

She goes on looking.

**STATICAL** लड़की देखती हुई जाती है ।

She is going looking along.

**CONTINUATIVE** लड़के लिखते रहते हैं ।

Boys keep on writing.

**PROGRESSIVE** लड़के लिखते जाते हैं ।

Boys go on writing.

**STATICAL** लड़के बात करते हुए जाते हैं ।

Boys are going talking along.

### EXERCISES

1. Transate into English,

१ हर रविवार की सब लोग गिरजों में जाया करते हैं ।

२ सब लड़के फुटवाल खेला करते हैं ।

३ उसका भाई बौला चाहता है ।

४ क्या तुम अपने घर जाना चाहते हो ?

५ पानी बरसा चाहता है ।

६ वह उठना चाहती थी ।

७ आजकल चीनी का भाव बढ़ता जाता है ।

८ उस घर में सारी रात लालटेन जलती रहती है ।

९ वे सब बात करते हुए जाते थे ।

१० वे खींचते जाते हैं ।

2. Translate into Hindi.

1. Everyday boys and girls go to school.

2. On Sunday I read this book for two hours.
3. His father is about to die.
4. Do you want to go to church ?
5. She wants to read this book,
6. His marriage is about to take place.
7. Two girls were coming along singing.
8. They go on reading.

### REVISION OF COMPOUND VERBS

Verbs	Form in which the Associated Verb is used	Name given to the Compound Verbs
सकना intrans	With the stem	Potentials
चुकना "	"	Compleatives
लगना "	Inflected Infinitive	Inceptives
देना trans	"	Permissives
पाना "	"	Acquisitives
करना "	Perfect Participle	Frequentatives
रहना intrans	Imperfect or Perfect Participle	Continuatives
जाना "	"	" or Progressives
चाहना trans	Uninflected Infinitive	Desirative

**EXERCISE**

## 1. Translate into Hindi.

- 1 I am reading this book.
- 2 I want to read this book.
- 3 I have begun to read this book.
- 4 I was not allowed to read this book.
- 5 Allow me to read this book.
- 6 I was about to read this book.
- 7 I read this book everyday.
- 8 I must read this book.
- 9 I can read this book.
- 10 I have finished reading this book.

**LESSON 45****The Verbs to have, to be.**

The Verb to have is generally translated wrong into Hindi because the Hindi idiom differs in meaning and construction. To illustrate the various uses of the verb 'to have' we give the following examples.

1. When to have, means to possess, it is पास है in Hindi. It is used with the Genitive Case.

I have मेरे पास है ।

You have तुम्हारे (आपके) पास है ।

He, she, it has	उमके पास है ।
Ram has	राम के पास है ।
They have	उनके पास है ।
We have	हमारे पास है ।
The boys have	लड़कों के पास है ।
George has an umbrella.	जार्ज के पास एक छाता है
We have a car	हमारे पास एक मोटर है ।

2. Sometimes 'to have' means to be, है, होता है or था होता था, and Locative or Genitive Case is used.

Trees have branches	पेड़ में डालियाँ हैं ।
April has thirty days	अप्रैल में तीस दिन होते हैं।
A fish has fins	मछली के पर हैं ।
He has four sons	उसके चार बेटे हैं ।
We had many servants	हमारे कई नौकर थे ।
We had a beautiful garden	हमारे पास एक सुंदर बगीचा था ।

A week has seven days हफ्तेमें सात दिन होते हैं ।

3. In the Future Tense to have is पाना

I shall have a knife.	मैं एक चाकू पाऊँगा ।
You will have your book	तुम अपनी पुस्तक पाओगे ।
He will have his pen	वह अपनी कलम पावेगा ।
They will have leave	वे छुट्टी पावेंगे ।

**THE VERB होना to be**

The Verb होना to be is an Auxiliary and is used with the Perfect and Imperfect Participles to form the Perfect and Imperfect Tenses, but the Verb होता ( Imp. Participle of होना ) is used along with other parts of the Verb TO BE (( है, था etc.) as a predicate of things which are general and usual, a natural and unalterable fact, and when happenings occur repeatedly, e g.

आम मीठे होते हैं      Mangoes are sweet.

हफ्ते में सात दिन होते हैं      There are seven days in a week.

चिड़ियों के पर होते हैं      Birds have feathers.

**EXERCISES**

1. Translate into English .

१ उसके पास एक रुपया है ।

२ एडवर्ड के दो लड़के और दो लड़कियां थीं ।

३ हर कमरे में चार खिड़कियां थीं ।

४ तुम लोग अपना इनाम पाओगे ।

५ उसके पास एक पालतू बन्दर था ।

६ मेरे पास एक तोता है ।

७ उस घर में प्राँब कमरे हैं ।

८ उसके तीन बड़े-बड़े मकाम हैं ।

९ उसके पास बहुत सा रुपया है ।

१० राम और श्याम के पास बहुत से कबूतर हैं ।

११ पेड़ में पत्ते होते हैं । १२ गाय के दो सींग होते हैं ।

2. Translate into Hindi :

- 1 I have a cow.
- 2 The ox has two horns.
- 3 The room has one door only.
- 4 That old man has five sons.
- 5 They have a car.
- 6 Marry has a good friend.
- 7 Sohan has three servants.
- 8 You will have your dog.
- 9 The tree has leaves.
- 10 He will have a gun.
- 11 A horse has no horns.
- 12 There are thirty days in a month.

### LESSON 46.

#### Some Idiomatic Uses of Verbs

उठना, उठाना

उठो, अपना मुँह धोओ	Go and wash your face.
मैं सुबह ५ बजे उठता हूँ	I rise early at 5 a.m.
एक बड़ी आँधी उठी	A heavy storm arose.
दूकान उठ गई है	The business has been closed.
यह कानून उठ गया है	This law has been abolished.
अपना हाथ उठाओ	Raise your hand.

यह बोझ मेरे सिर पर उठा दीजिये ।

Please lift this burden to my head.

एक भेड़िया बच्चे को उठा ले गया ।

A wolf carried away the child.

बाजार सवेरे उठ जाता है The market is closed earlier.

### काटना

मेरी अँगुली कट गई है

I have cut my finger.

एक पागल कुत्ते ने उस काटा

A mad dog bit him.

किसान धान काट रहे हैं

The farmers are cutting  
paddy.

नाई बाल काट रहा है

The barber is cropping  
hair.

चूहों ने कोट को काट डाला है

Rats have made holes  
in the coat.

उसके वेतन से ५) रु० काट लिए जायेंगे ।

Five rupees will be deducted from his salary.

एक आदमी रेलगाड़ी से कट गया है ।

A man is run over by the train.

स्कूल से उसका नाम कट गया है ।

His name has been struck off the school rolls.

### मिलना

हमको रास्ते में उसका भाई मिला

We met his brother on the way.



वह अपने मित्र से मिलने गया है ।

He has gone to see his friend.

मुझे सड़क पर एक पांच रुपये का नोट मिला ।

I found a five rupee note on the road.

उसको घर जाने की आज्ञा नहीं मिली ।

He did not get permission to go home.

सब लड़के लड़कियां मिलकर खेल रहे हैं ।

All the boys and girls are playing together.

हमको प्रति दिन आध सेर दूध मिलता है ।

We get half a seer milk every day.

### चलना-चलाना

आओ, हम जल्दी से चलें । Come, Let us go quickly.

वह यहां से चला गया । He left this place.

मेरी घड़ी ठीक नहीं चल रही है ।

My watch is not going right.

वह गाड़ी अच्छी तरह नहीं चला सकता ।

He cannot drive a coach well.

सिपाहियों ने बन्दूक चलाई । The soldiers fired a gun.

मैं अपना खर्च नहीं चला सकता ।

I cannot meet my expenses.

तुम्हारी दुकान कैसी चल रही है? How is your shop going?

### छोड़ना

मेरा हाथ छोड़ दो

Let go my hand.

मजिस्ट्रेट ने कैदी को छोड़ दिया

The magistrate released the prisoner.

गाड़ी कब छूटेगी ? When will the train start ?

उसने पढ़ना छोड़ दिया He gave up his studies,

क्या तुम नौकरी छोड़ दोगे Will you resign your post ?

कौन बन्दूक छोड़ता है Who is firing the gun ?

### पकड़ना

उसने मेरा हाथ पकड़ा He caught hold of my hand.

चोर पकड़ा गया है The thief has been caught.

सिपाही चोर को रकड़ने आये हैं।

The police have come to arrest the thief.

### लगना

इस काम को करने में दो दिन लगेंगे।

It will take two days to do it,

मकान में आग लग गई। The house caught fire,

उमको बुरी तरह चोट लगी है। He is badly hurt.

मुझे प्यास लगी है। I feel thirsty.

मुझे ठंड लगी है। I have caught cold.

इस मकान में तुम्हारे कितने रुपये लगे ?

How much has this house cost you ?

दवा कड़वी लगती है। The medicine tastes bitter

वे काम में लगे हैं। They are engaged in work.

उसने अपने घाव में दवा लगाई।

He applied lotion to his wound.

आना

वह क्रोध में आया ।

He became angry.

मुझको याद नहीं आता ।

I do not remember.

मुझे उस पर बड़ी दया आई ।

I took pity on him.

उस लड़के को पढ़ना नहीं आता ।

This boy does not know how to read.

चोड़ा बोझ ढोने के काम आता है

The horse is used to carry loads.

### EXERCISES

4. Translate into English :

१ चोर अभी तक नहीं पकड़े जा सके ।

२ उस दिन रात को बड़ी आँधी उठी और पानी बरसा

३ रविवार की हाट चार बजे उठ जाती है ।

४ आप मेरे वीतन से ये रुपये काट सकते हैं ।

५ इस मोटर को खरीदने में कितने रुपये लगे ।

६ यह चाकू बड़ा तेज है ।

७ इतनी दूर पैदल जाने में छः दिन लगेंगे ।

८ वह अपने पिता से मिलने कल गया था ।

९ मुझे रास्ते में रुपयों से भरी एक थैली मिली ।

2. Translate into Hindi :

1 I feel hungry.

2 This book has cost me five rupees.

3. He cut his finger with a knife.
4. The barber is cropping hair.
5. The soldiers fired the gun.
6. He gave up his ssudies.
7. He resigned his post.
8. I have not received any letter from my father.
9. He met a man on the road.
10. He was very angry when he heard this.



# **Chapter IX**

## **INDECLINABLES**

### **LESSON 47**

#### **Indeclinables (अव्यय)**

In Hindi there are a number of such words which are called Indeclinables (अव्यय) because they are not subject to inflexional changes. They are the Adverb, the Post-position, Conjunction ( or Disjunction ) and the Interjection

#### **अव्यय क्रिया विशेषण**

An Adverb is a word that tells us something about the Verb. Such words are not subject to inflection having no Number or Gender. They can be divided into seven groups according to their meanings. They are:

- (1) **Adverbs of Time**
- (2)        **Place**
- (3)        **Manner**
- (4)        **Cause**
- (5)        **Quantity**
- (6) **Interrogative Adverbs**
- (7) **Affirming and Denying**

**Distinguish the adverb in each sentence.**

1. Time      राम ! तुम कलकत्ता कब जाओगे ?  
 Ram, when will you go to Calcutta ?  
 कल जाऊँगा । To-morrow.

**2 Place**

क्या वह यहाँ आया था ? Did he come here ?  
 नहीं, वह यहाँ नहीं आया वहीं रह गया ।

No, he did not come here but he stayed there

NOTE—उधर (thither) and इधर (hither) are different from वहाँ (there) and यहाँ (here), The former mean direction and the latter mean place,

**3. Manner**

वह दौड़कर चला He went running.

वह चिल्लाकर बोला He cried aloud,

उसको जैसा कहा गया वैसा ही उसने किया

He did as he was told.

**4. Cause**

मैं स्टेशन पर देर से पहुँचा इसलिए गाड़ी नहीं पकड़ सका ।

As I arrived at the station late, I could not catch the train.

**5. Quantity**

यह बहुत नहीं है, बहुत थोड़ा है ।

It is not much but very little.

तुम्हें कुछ अवश्य करना चाहिये ।

You must do something.

(6) Interrogative

क्या तुम जाओगे ? Will you go ?

तुमने तह क्यों किया Why did you do this ?

(7) affirming and Denying :

QUESTION

ANSWER

क्या वह आया ?

हां, वह आया ।

Did he come ?

Yes, he came.

नहीं, वह नहीं आया ।

No, he did not come.

यह काम मत करो Don't do this.

COMMON ADVERBS

1. ADVERBS OF PLACE :-

यहाँ, यहीं here, वहाँ, वहीं there, जहाँ, जहीं where.

तहाँ, तहीं there, कहाँ, कहीं where, सबत्र everywhere

सब जगह everywhere, पार on the other side.

के पास, निकट, समीप near, दूर far, भीतर inside.

बाहर outside.

Adverbs of Directions :--

इधर hither, उधर thither, जिधर whither, तिधर

thither. किधर whither, दाहिने to the right बायें to the left.

## 2. ADVERBS OF TIME :—

अब now, तब then, ज० when, कब when, कभी any time.

आज today, कल to-morrow, yesterday, परसों yesterday or the day before yesterday, आगे before, पहिले before, previously.

मबेरे, तड़के early, प्रतिदिन everyday, कभी कभी occasionally, बार बार again and again.

एकबार once, फिर again, once more, इतने में mean. while निदान, अन्त में finally.

## 3. ADVERBS OF MANNER :—

यों, ऐसे in this manner, वैसे in that manner, ज्यों as

त्यों like that, क्यों how, why, अचानक, एकाएक suddenly.

जल्द, जल्दी, तुरन्त, भट, भटपट quickly.

अकस्मात् suddenly, प्रायः usually, अर्थात् namely, that is to say, सा like,

भर whole, धीरे slowly, धीरे धीरे slowly, सच truly.

सचमुच truly, झूठ falsely, ठीक, ठीक-ठीक, exactly



**4. ADVERBS OF QUANTITY :—**

बहुन much, घड़ा, अति very.

अधिक more, कम less, तनिक a little.

कुछ some, केवल only, विरले very few: seldom.

एकबार once, दोबार twice. इतना as much.

उतना that much; कितना how much,

**5. ADVERBS OF CAUSE :—**

इसलिये therefore. इसकारण for this reason, अतएव  
therefore, क्योंकि because.

**6. INTERROGATIVE ADVERBS :—**

क्यों why, क्या what.

**7. AFFIRMING & DENYING :—**

हाँ yes, न, नहीं no.

मत no, अच्छा yes, very well.

जरूर, अवश्य certainly.

क्यों नहीं yes (why not), शायद perhaps.

कदापि per chance, possibly.

**EXERCISES****1. Translate into English:—**

१ जब तुम आये तब वह जला गया ।

२ मैंने इसे एक बार पढ़ा, दो बार पढ़ा पर याद न आ ।

- ३ मुझे केवल पाँच रूपये दे दीजिए ।  
 ४ लड़के दिन भर धूरा में खेल रहे थे ।  
 ५ मेरी मां बीमार थी इसलिए कल मैं स्कूल न आ सका ।  
 ६ ज्यों ही मैं स्कूल में पहुँचा घंटी बजी ।  
 ७ कितने ही आदमी धीरे धीरे भोजन करते हैं ।  
 ८ वह दड़ी तेजी से दौड़ सकता है ।  
 ९ मैं वहाँ जल्द आऊँगा ।  
 १० वह शायद यहाँ आवे ।

Translate into Hindi :

- 1 He will return soon
- 2 Ram goes to school every day.
- 3 Horses run quickly.
- 4 They go out for a walk every morning.
- 5 You should not do this.
- 6 If you come to me I will give you a book.
- 7 The boy went back whence he came.
- 8 He was very pleased with me.
- 9 Owing to my father's illness I shall not be able to come to school today.
- 10 I saw him twice.



## LESSON 48.

**Simple Postpositions I ( सम्बन्ध बोधक )****Uses of ने (ne) and को (ko)**

**AGENTIVE CASE :** If the Postposition ने is used with the Subject, it is called the Agentive Case

**RULE 1.** ने is used with the Subject if the Verb is Transitive and of Perfect Participles :

लड़के ने एक घर देखा      The boy saw a house.

मैं ने एक आम खाया      I ate a mango.

**RULE 2** If ने is used with the Subject and the Object is without Postposition को, the Verb agrees with the Object in Number & Gender.

मेरी बहिन ने दो आम खाये My sister ate two mangoes.

लड़के ने एक पुस्तक पढ़ी      The boy read a book.

लड़की ने घर देखे      The girl saw the houses.

**RULE 2.** If the Postposition को is used with the Object, the Verb always takes the form of the Masculine Singular,

मैंने राम को देखा      I saw Ram.

लड़कों ने लड़कियों को देखा      The boys saw the girls.

उसने अपनी बहिनों को देखा      He saw his sisters.

**Exemption**—The following Verbs, though Transitive, are exceptions to the above rule, and the Agentive ने is not used with them.

लाना to bring, भूलना to forget, बरुना to chatter idly, बोलना to speak and लड़ना to fight ( if the Object is mentioned).

### Uses of को (ko)

**RULE 1.** It ( को ) is generally used with proper names :

राम को बुलाओ      Call Ram.

**RULE 2.** It is used with Pronouns :

मैंने उसको देखा      I saw him.

**RULE 3.** It is used when the Object is a definite one.

इस कलम को फेंक दो      Throw away this pen.

But कोई कलम ले आओ      Bring any pen.

**RULE 4.** Sometimes when the definite article is used in English :

लड़कों ने साँप को मारा      The boys killed the snake.

But लड़कों ने एक साँप मारा      The boys killed a snake

**RULE 5.** If there are two Objects in a sentence . it is used with the indirect object.

## LESSON 48.

**Simple Postpositions I ( सम्बन्ध बोधक )****Uses of ने (ne) and को (ko)**

**AGENTIVE CASE :** If the Postposition ने is used with the Subject, it is called the Agentive Case

**RULE 1.** ने is used with the Subject if the Verb is Transitive and of Perfect Participles :

लड़के ने एक घर देखा      The boy saw a house.

मैं ने एक आम खाया      I ate a mango.

**RULE 2** If ने is used with the Subject and the Object is without Postposition को, the Verb agrees with the Object in Number & Gender.

मेरी बहिन ने दो आम खाये      My sister ate two mangoes.

लड़के ने एक पुस्तक पढ़ी      The boy read a book.

लड़की ने घर देखे      The girl saw the houses.

**RULE 2.** If the Postposition को is used with the Object, the Verb always takes the form of the Masculine Singular,

मैं ने राम को देखा      I saw Ram,

लड़कों ने लड़कियों को देखा      The boys saw the girls.

उसने अपनी बहिनों को देखा      He saw his sisters.

**Exemption**—The following Verbs, though Transitive, are exceptions to the above rule, and the Agentive ने is not used with them.

लाना to bring, भूलना to forget, बरुना to chatter idly, बोलना to speak and लड़ना to fight ( if the Object is mentioned).

### Uses of को (ko)

**RULE 1.** It ( को ) is generally used with proper names :

राम को बुलाओ      Call Ram.

**RULE 2.** It is used with Pronouns :

मैंने उसको देखा      I saw him.

**RULE 3.** It is used when the Object is a definite one.

इस कलम को फेंक दो      Throw away this pen.

But कोई कलम ले आओ      Bring any pen.

**RULE 4.** Sometimes when the definite article is used in English :

लड़कों ने साँप को मारा      The boys killed the snake.

But लड़कों ने एक साँप मारा      The boys killed a snake

**RULE 5.** If there are two Objects in a sentence it is used with the indirect object,

उसने मेरे पिता को एक घोड़ा दिया ।

He gave my father a horse.

मैंने भिखारी को एक आना दिया ।

I gave one anna to the beggar.

### EXERCISES

#### 1. Translate into Hindi

- 1 The boy ate bread.
- 2 The boys ate bread.
- 3 He wrote a letter.
- 4 He wrote letters.
- 5 He saw a house.
- 6 She saw the houses.
- 7 The girl ate rice.
- 8 I said this thing.
- 9 She called three boys.

#### 2. Translate into Hindi :

- 1 The cows ate the grass.
- 2 The girls have eaten sixteen mangoes.
- 3 The boys had eaten two fishes.
- 4 She had opened her eyes.
- 5 I bought seven pearls.
- 6 We caught many fishes.
- 7 The girl sewed the sheet.
- 8 The man has dug the ground.
- 9 They ploughed the field.
- 10 The mother has struck her son.

## LESSON 49

### Simple Postposition II.

1. **से** is used with the **Instrumental** and **Ablative** Cases to denote :

1. **SEPERATION :**

भाई भाई से अलग हो जायगा ।

Brother will be seperated **from** brother.

2. **SOURCE, ORIGIN OR CAUSE :**

बह पढ़ने की इच्छा से आया ।

He came in the ( **from the** ) hope of learning.

3. **MEANS OR INSTRUMENT :**

छुरी से काटो      Cut (it) with a knife.

4. **AGENT with PASSIVE VERBS :**

मुझ से किताब पढ़ी गई ।

The book was read by me.

5. **MANNER & PROHIBITION :**

यह किस प्रकार से हो सका है ।

How can that be ?

धीरे से बोलो ।

Speak slowly.



## 6. COMPARISON :

तुम्हारी पुस्तक मेरी पुस्तक से छोटी है ।

Your book is smaller than mine.

## 7. THE PERSON SPOKEN TO :

मोहन से कहो । Say to Mohan.

## 2. का, के, की of are used with Genitive Case and are used to denote:—

## 1. POSSESSION :

यह उसका घोड़ा है । This is his horse.

## 2. RELATIONSHIP :

वह उसकी माता थी । She was his mother.

## 3. MATERIAL :

मेरी स्लेट पत्थर की है ।

My slate is made of stone.

## 4. PRICE :

यह पुस्तक चार आने की है ।

This book costs four annas.

## 5. AGE :

यह लड़की पन्द्रह बरस की है ।

This girl is fifteen years old.

## 6. USE :

यह पढ़ने की पुस्तक है ।

This book is for reading.

7. The things sworn by :

ईश्वर की कसम "By God"

3. में, पर, तक are used with the Locative Case.

में corresponds to, in, among, at, between, and of:

घर में । in the house,

मनुष्यों में । among men.

चरणों में । at the feet,

इन दोनों में क्या अन्तर है ।

What is the difference between these two.

वह सब लड़कों में बड़ा लड़का है ।

That boy is the biggest of all.

पर corresponds to on or at :

घोड़े पर चढ़ो । Mount on a horse.

दरवाजे पर मत खड़े होओ ।

Do not stand at the door.

तक corresponds to upto :

पेट तक पानी आ गया ।

The water came up to the stomach.

4. में से through (across) of :

वह जंगल में से होकर आया ।

He came through (across) the forest.

हम में से वहाँ एक जायगा ।

One of us will go there.

## 5. पर से FROM:

वह धोड़े पर से गिर पड़ा ।

He fell down from the horse.

## EXERCISES

## 1. Translate into English .-

१ शहर को देखकर वे बनारस से चले आये ।

२ मेरा हाथ उसके हाथ से बड़ा है ।

३ राम ने सीता से विवाह किया ।

४ वह हिन्दी में बात कर रहा था ।

५ मेम साहब रसोई में गई ।

६ ये चारों उस की लड़कियाँ हैं ।

७ उसकी बहिन कितने वर्ष की है ?

८ मैं बाग में से उसके घर गया ।

९ वह औरत चलती गाड़ी पर से कूद पड़ी ।

१० इन लड़कों में सब से अच्छा कौन है ?

## 2. Translate into Hindi:

1 He has two daughters.

2 She bought eight silver plates.

3 He is smaller than I (am).

4 Dick was coming from Calcutta.

5 I fill this pot with water.

6 Hira Lal is good at reading and writing.

7 He is speaking in Bengali,

8 They will stay here for two days.

9 How old are you ?

10 Cut this branch with an axe.

## LESSON 50.

**COMPOUND POSTPOSITIONS** (सम्बन्ध बोधक)

1. The following are preceded by के

**ABOVE** के उपर, से अधिक--

उसकी अवस्था बारह वर्ष के ऊपर है।

He is above twelve years of age.

**ABOUT** के लगभग, के विषय में, करीब (Urdu)--

इस समय लगभग तीन बजे हैं।

It is about three o'clock now.

मैं उसके विषय में कुछ नहीं जानता।

I do not know anything about him.

**AFTER** के पीछे, के बाद, के उपरान्त--

वह एक वर्ष के बाद लौटा।

He returned after one year.

एक के पीछे एक खड़े हो।

Stand one after another.

वे राजकुमार के सामने खड़े थे

They stood before the prince.

**ACCORDING TO** के अनुसार, के अनुकूल--

मेरी सलाह के अनुसार काम करो।

Do as I tell you to do.

**ACROSS** के पार, बीच से--

हम नदी के पार रहते हैं ।

We live **across** the river.

मैदान के बीच से एक सड़क जाती है ।

A road runs **across** the plain.

**AGAINST** के विरुद्ध, प्रतिकूल, विपरीत, खिलाफ (Urdu)

यह नियम के विरुद्ध है ।

It is **against** the rule.

**AROUND** के आस पास—

गाँव के आस पास जंगल है ।

There is a forest **around** the village.

**BEFORE** के आगे, सामने, पहले, पूर्व—

चार बजे से पहले घर मत आओ ।

Do not go home **before** 4 o'clock.

वे राजकुमार के सामने खड़े थे ।

They stood **before** the prince.

**BEHIND** (see after)

**BELOW** के लिये, तले

**BENEATH** " "

यह एक पत्थर के नीचे है ।

It lies **beneath** this stone.

**BESIDES** के सिवा, अतिरिक्त--

तुम्हारे सिवा उसके और भी मित्र हैं :

He has other friend- besides you.

**BETWEEN** के बीच--

आगरा और देहली के बीच २५ स्टेशन हैं

There are twenty five stations **BETWEEN**

Agra and Delhi.

**FOR** के लिये, निमित्त, वास्ते ।

मैं उसके लिये एक चित्र लाऊँगा ।

I will bring a picture for him.

**IN FRONT OF** के सामने, आगे--

वे राजा के सामने खड़े हुए ।

They stood in front of the king.

**INSIDE** के भीतर--

इस घर के भीतर एक आदमी है ।

There is a man inside the house.

**INSTEAD** के बदले, पल्लटे--

उस के बदले उसका भाई आयेगा ।

His brother will come in his stead.

**LIKE** के समान, तुल्य, सदृश--

उसका चेहरा अपने पिता के समान है ।

His face is like his father's.

**MIDDLE** के बीच--

मैं नदी के बीच जाऊँगा ।

I shall go to the middle of the river.

**NEAR** के पास, नजदीक, (Urdu) समीप, निकट

मेरे घर के पास एक बड़ा पेड़ है ।

There is a big tree near my house.

**ON ACCOUNT OF** के कारण (see because)

**ON BOTH SIDES** के आस पास (see around)

**OVER** के ऊपर

नदी के ऊपर एक पुल है ।

There is a bridge over the river.

**REGARDING** के विषय में see about)

**ROUND ABOUT** के आसपास (see around)

**THROUGH** के द्वारा, हाथ (per) से--

मुझे उस आदमी के द्वारा (से) एक चिट्ठी मिली ।

I got a letter through that man.

**WITH** के साथ, संग--

वह मेरे साथ आया He came with me.

~~WITHOUT~~ **WITHOUT** के बिना

बिना आज्ञा अन्दर आना मना है

No admission without permission.

The following are preceded by **की ( of )**

**LIKE** **की नाई, तरह, भाँति** (see समान)

**THAN** **की अपेक्षा, से**

वह रुपड़ा उसकी अपेक्षा अच्छा है ।

This cloth is better than that.

**TOWARDS** **तरफ, ओर**

पौज शहर की ओर रवाना हुई ।

The army marched towards the city.

The following are preceded by **से**

**BEYOND** **से परे**

नदी से परे एक गाँव है ।

Beyond the river there is a village.

**OUTSIDE** **से बाहर**

नगर से बाहर एक जंगल है ।

There is a forest outside the city.

**NOTE**—Sometimes **का, के, की, से** etc. are omitted

before Compound Postpositions,

### EXERCISES

**I.** Give the Hindi of the words in black :

1 On the table.

2 It hangs over the bed.

3 He lives over the river.



- 4 Some went before, others followed behind.  
 5 He stood before the king.  
 6. Come to me before you go.  
 7 The king spoke first, after him the Prime-Minister.  
 8 All the three came.  
 9 It was surrounded by water on all sides  
 10 He sat by the king.
2. Translate the words in black:
1. (He stood) **over** the well —**upto** the ladder—**between** the gates—**inside** the house—**beyond** the river—**ON THIS SIDE** of the road—**BELOW** the roof. (He went) **TOWARDS** the garden—**by the way of** the village—**WITH** his father.
- 3 Write sentences to illustrate the use of the Postpositions :
- लगभग, साथ, बिना, अनुसार, नीचे, ओर, आसपास, बाहर  
 विषय में, बदले ।

### Conjunctions or Disjunctions. (संयोजक or विभाजक)

- A Conjunction joins one word to another word  
 or one sentence to another sentence. —Nesfield  
 The following are the principal Conjunctions.

- 1 **CUMULATIVE** और and  
 भी also  
 फिर again

**2. ADVIRSATIVE** पर or परन्तु but

विन्तु	”
वरन्	”
लेकिन	”
बल्कि	”
मगर	”

**3 ALTERNATIVE** वा, वा, अथवा, or

यातो.....या तो or यातो or या

either.....or

नहीं लो or न.....न neither....nor

चाहे.....चाहे whether....or

क्या .....क्या either....or

**4. CORDITIONAL** जो if.....तो then

यदि, अगर if

**5. CONCSSIVE**

यद्यपि (although)-- तथापि or तथापि nevertheless

चाहेshould, though--तोभी

even, if-- तोभी

**6. ILATIVE** तो so, therefore

इससे so, for this

## 7. EXPLANATORY कि that

क्योंकि because, as

जिसमें

तक in order

ऐसा न हो कि lest

## EXERCISES

1. Join the following sentences together:

Use और (and)

(i) मैं हिन्दी पढ़ सकता हूँ ?

मैं हिन्दी लिख सकता हूँ ?

ii) हिन्दुस्तान में गेहूँ बहुत पैदा होता है ।

यहाँ रुई बहुत पैदा होती है ।

यहाँ चावल बहुत पैदा होता है ।

Use परन्तु (but)

राम को मैंने कल डुलाया था ।

राम मेरे पास नहीं आया ।

Use क्योंकि (because)

गुरु जी ने आज राम को खूब पीटा ।

वह पाठशाला से किताब चुरा लाया था ।

Use इसलिए (therefore)

मुझ को आज बुखार आ रहा है ।

मैं आज स्कूल नहीं जाऊंगा ।

Use या तो—या (either -or )

यह पुस्तक माइनने फाड़ी है ।

यह पुस्तक राम ने फाड़ी है ।

दोनों में से एक ने भाड़ी है ।

2. Translate into English :

१ जार्ज और उसके भाई ने विलियम को मारा है ।

२ मेरे पिता या भाई आज आने वाले हैं ।

३ मुझे न तुम्हारे पिता का डर है न तुम्हारा ।

४ मैंने उसे सालभर पढ़ाया पर वह फेल हो गया ।

५ जाकर हेडमास्टर से कहो कि मैं आज नहीं आ सकूँगा

६ बाघ और सिंह मांस खाते हैं ।

७ यह आ नहीं सकता क्योंकि वह बीमार था ।

८ वह चतुर है पर बड़ा आलसी है ।

९ यद्यपि वह देरी से आया था तो भी जल्दी ही चला गया ।

2. Translate into Hindi :

1 Go and bring the doctor.

2 Shila or Lila is coming today.

3 He will neither speak himself nor let any one else speak.

4 I gave him sweets because he was hungry.

5 Owing to his illness he could not come.

6 Although he is clever he does not work hard.

7 He can read but he cannot write.

8 I know that he is a good man.

9 Neither Ram nor Rahim said this.

## LESSON 52.

### INTERJECTION ( विस्मयादियोधक अव्यय )

An Interjection is unlike every other Part of Speech since it does not enter into the construction of a sentence.

It is merely an exclamatory sound, thrown into a sentence to denote some strong feeling or emotion.

The following are the principal Interjections:-

हे	Vocative Case Interjection.
जी or जी हाँ	A polite way of saying 'yes'
अरे	Indicates surprise.
रे, अरे	Expresses contempt.
अहा	„ admiration
ओ	„ mingled surprise and sorrow
ओ हो	„ „ wonder and surprise
वाह वाह	Very good, excellent, well done. bravo
खूब	„
बहुत अच्छा	„
शाबास	„

हा, हा हा, हाय Alas !

छिः Fie, for shame, away with it

छिः छिः ”

उफ Expresses disgust,

अच्छा All right.

कहिए Hallo !

हाय रे भाग्य Ah me !

हा भगवान Oh my God !

दोहाई Here me ! help me ! I make a plaint to you

त्राहि Mercy ! shield me !

भला Well.

वम Enough.

जय Victory, success to....

जय जय ” ”

रामराम Do not say that.

धन्य Fortunate.

धन्यवाद Thanks.

### SOME MORE ILLUSTRATIONS :

शाबास ! खूब मारा ।

Bravo ! Well done ! A capital hit !

ओ मुझे बड़ी चोट है । Oh ! I am badly hurt.

अहा कैसा सुन्दर दिन है Oh ! what a lovely day !

हाय ! अब मैं कहाँ जाऊँ ? Alas ! where am I to go now ?

हा ! दुभाग्य Wo is me !

झिः झिः तुम्हारा यह काम

Shame ! you have done such a deed !

महाराज को जय !

Hip Hip Hurrah ! Three cheer for the Maharaja  
(King)

कैसे दुख की बात है ! What a pity !

कैसा आश्चर्य है ! How strange !

कैसी मूर्खता है ! What nonsense !

क्यों ? इसको मारो तो देखूँ Pish ! dare you beat him.

## EXERCISES

1. Translate into English.

१ आपकी बिट्ठी मिली, धन्यवाद ।

२ कहो भाई ! कहाँ से आना हुआ ?

३ क्यों मित्र, अच्छे तो हो ।

४ अरे ! इस में तो कोई प्रेत बैठा है ।

५ अच्छा ! मैं अवश्य आऊँगा ।

६ वस, अब मत खेलो ।

७ शाश्वत, शाश्वत ! लगाओ जोर, लगाओ जोर ।

८ भला मुझे चौपाया कौन कह सकता है ?

६ वाह ! कुर्ये से समुद्र क्योकर बड़ा हो सकता है ।

१० हे ईश्वर ! मेरी जान बचाने के लिये तूने ही उसे भेजा था

Translation into Hindi:

- 1 Oh ! how beautiful this garden is ?
- 2 Is it not a lovely day ?
- 3 Long live the King.
- 4 Oh ! she is badly hurt.
- 5 Marvellous ! see what a huge fish.
- 6 I thank you very much.
- 7 yes, I am here.
- 8 well done ! it was a splendid play!
- 9 For pity's sake ! do not do this.
- 10 Right oh ! come tomorrow at ten o'clock.

### LESSON 53.

### PREFIXES ( उपसर्ग )

Prefix	Meaning	Examples
अ	Negation	अन्याय injustice
अन	"	अनमोल priceless
बे	"	बेकाम without work
अप	defect	अपमान insult
अनु	after, according to, inferior	अनुवाद translation अनुकूल in accordance with
अभि	Superior, before	अभिमान pride



प्रति	opposition, substitution, repetition	प्रतिदिन day by day प्रतिवाद opposition
उप	inferiority, nearness	उपवन small garden, park उपस्थित standing near
कु	bad	कुपुत्र unworthy son
दुस् or दुर .,		दुर्गन्ध foul smell
सु	good	सुशील of good nature (conduct)
निस or निर्	negation	निर्बल powerless
पर	distant	परदेशी foreigner
परा	the reverse	पराजय defeat
परि	around	परिश्रम hard work
प्र	excess	प्रयत्न great effort
वि	disjunctive	विरोध foreign country विधवा widow (without husband)
स	conjunctive	सफल fruitful
सह	with	सहपाठी class fellow

## EXERCISES

- Write twelve Hindi words in which अ निर् or निस, वे, सु, दुर, उर, प्रति, पर, वि, स and कु are found.
- Use the following words in sentences :-  
अपमान, अभिमान, अनुवाद, सुशील, विधवा, दुर्गन्ध

# LESSON 54

## SUFFIXES (प्रत्यय)

Suffixes can be divided into two classes :

1. कृदन्त Noun formed from Verbs as लिखने वाला  
writer from 'लिखना
2. तद्धित ,, ,, Nouns as दूध वाला  
milkman from दूध

### कृदन्त VERBAL NOUN)

The Verbal Nouns are formed from a Verbal base.

1. कर्तृवाचक संज्ञा, NOUN OF AGENCY indicates a doer and is formed by adding वाला to the inflected infinitives :

Verb	Noun
लिखना	लिखने वाला writer
बोलना	बोलने वाला speaker
सुनना	सुनने वाला listener

Some other Examples :

पालना	पालक preserver
करना	कारक (कर्ता) doer
गाना	गर्भ या singer

2. **कर्मवाचक संज्ञा** Indicates the act done and is formed from a Perfect Participle by adding हुआ (see the lesson on Use of Participles).

खाना	to eat	खाया हुआ	eaten
देखना	to see	देखा हुआ	seen
पढ़ना	to read	पढ़ा हुआ	read

3. **करणवाचक संज्ञा** (Instrumental Noun) indicates an instrument by which the act is done.

कतरना	to cut	कतरनी	scissors
झूलना	to swing	झूना	swing

4. **भाववाचक संज्ञा** (Abstract Nouns).

- (i) The stem or root alone :

दौड़ना	to run	दौड़	running or a race
समझना	to understand	समझ	understanding

- (ii) The stem lengthened :

चलना	to go	चाल	walk
पढ़ना	to read	पाठ	lesson

- (iii) Some other examples :

सीना	to sew	सिलाई	sewing
बुनना	to weave	बुनाई	weaving
देखना	to see	दिखाव	show, display

घबराना to worry

घबराहट worry

चिल्लाना to cry

चिल्लाहट outcry

तद्भिन्न

## NOUNS ( and Adjectives ) COMPOUNDED OF A NOUN AND A SUFFIX.

### 1. अपत्यवाचक (Petronymics) अपत्य means offspring

This class of Noun includes words, meaning  
descendants, followers and nationality :

पाण्डु Pandu पाण्डव the decendent of पाण्डु

कुरु Kurn कौरव " कुरु

शिव God Shiva शैव a worshipping of शिव

ईसा Jesus ईसाई a follower of ईसा

बुद्ध Budha बाद्ध " बुद्ध

पंजाब Punjab पंजाबी a man from पंजाब

लखनऊ Lucknow लखनवी " लखनऊ

### 2. कर्तृवाचक (Noun of Agency)

दूधवाला milkman,

रोटी वाला baker

कोयलावाला charcoal-dealer

लकड़हारा woodcutter.

गाड़ीवान cartman.

सुनार	goldsmith.
दुकानदार	shopkeeper

### 3. भाववाचक (Abstract Noun)

मूर्ख	fool	मूर्खता	foolishness
चतुर	clever	चतुराई	cleverness
मनुष्य	man	मनुष्यत्व	manhood
बालक	child	बालकपन	childhood
बूढ़ा	old	बुढ़ापा	oldage

### 4. गुणवाचक (Adjectival Nouns and Adjectives)

धन	धनवान	wealthy
दया	दयालु	merciful
भूख	भूखा	hungry
प्यास	प्यासा	thirsty
मास	मासिक	monthly
दिन	दैनिक	daily
सप्ताह	साप्ताहिक	weekly

### 5. ऊनवाचक संज्ञा (Diminutives) ऊन means deficient.

It is formed by adding ई or इया :—

जूता	shoe	जूती	slipper
रस्सा	roap	रस्सी	string
पत्ता	leaf	पत्ती	small leaf

थैला	bag	थैली	small bag, purse
गोला		ball गोली	bullet, pill, small ball
डिब्बा	small box	डिबिया	very small box
बेटी	daughter	बिटिया	little daughter
(for affection)			
खाट	bed-steeb	खटिया	small ded-stead
टोकरा	basket	टोकरी	small basket

### EXERCISES

1. Write twelve Hindi words in which the following suffixes are used:--

पन, क, वाला, ई, वान, इक, हट, हारा, आई, इया

2. To illustrate the use of suffixes, use the following words in sentences :

भूखा, दैनिक, टोकरी, थैली, पंजाबी, ईसा

3. Illustrate the use of the Noun of agency by translating the following into Hindi:—

The milkman is bringing milk.

The mail will come shortly.

He who knows the language of the country can go there.

He is about to make the journey to Simla.



## **Chapter X**

### **LESSON 55**

#### **Direct Speech**

In English what a person is reported to have said may be expressed in either of two ways. For example we may say,

#### **EITHER**

The boy said, "My father is ill."

#### **OR**

The boy said that his father was ill.

The former is called Direct Speech and the latter Indirect Speech. In Hindi only Direct Speech is used but the Conjunction कि that is generally placed before the exact words spoken.

Never mind what *tenhe* is used in the first part of the sentence. Quote the speaker's exact words and begin with कि and join it with the first part. Thus the above sentence becomes :

लड़के ने कहा कि मेरा बाप बीमार है ।

साईस को बोलो कि घोड़ा लाओ ।

Tell the groom to bring the horse.

OR

साईस को कहो कि घोड़ा लावे ।

नौकर के मन में आया कि माल लेकर भागे ।

It occurred to the servant to take away the goods.

### EXERCISES

2. Translate into English :

१ राम कहता है कि वह दिल्ली जायगा ।

२ उस के मन में आया कि मैं यह पुस्तक पढ़ूँ ।

३ जॉन ने कहा मैं अपने भाई को बुलाऊँगा ।

४ दूकानदार से पूछो कि उस के पास टोप है या नहीं ।

५ मारर ने लड़कों से कहा कि कल यह पाठ अवश्य याद कर लेना

2. Translate into Hindi :

1 Ram says, "I am ill."

2 He asked me whether I was going there.

3 The teacher said, "The earth moves round the sun"

4 John said that he would not go to Delhi.

5 She told me that she had four sons and daughters.

### LESSON 56

#### Parsing.

For parsing a word, the students should follow the following method.

#### 1. Noun

1 What kind ? ( Proper, Common, Collective; Material or Abstract .



2. What Gender ? (Masculine or Feminine)
3. What Number ? (Singular or Plural)
4. What Case ? (Nominative, Accusative etc.)
5. What relation with the Verb etc. ?

### Example.

माता ने लड़के को दूध दिया ।

माता ने Common Noun, Feminine, Singular,  
Nominative Case, Subject to the Verb दिया  
लड़के को Common Noun. Masculine, Singular,  
Dative Case, Indirect Object to the Verb दिया,  
दूध Common Noun, Masculine, Singular,  
Accusative Case, Direct object to the  
Verb दिया

### Pronoun

1. Kind. 2. Person. 3. Gender. 4. Number.
5. Case. 6. Relation with the Verb etc.

### Example

मैं उसके घर जाता हूँ ।

मैं Personal Pronoun, First Person, Masculine,  
Singular, Nominative Case, Subject to the  
Verb जाना.  
उसके Personal Pronoun, Third Person, Masculine  
Singular, Genitive Case.

### Adjective

1. What kind ? 2. What Noun or Pronoun it qualifies.

वह साफ कपड़े पहिन्ता है ।

साफ Descriptive Adjective. Qualifies the Noun कपड़े ।

### Verb.

1 What Kind ? ( Transitive or Intransitive

2 What Voice ? (Active or Passive )

What Tense ? ( Present Imperfect, Past Imperfect etc. )

4 What Person ?

5 What Gender ?

6 What Number ?

7 What Relation with the Subject ?

### Example

मैं दूध पीता हूँ

पीता हूँ—Transitive Verb, Active Voice, Present Imperfect Tense, First Person, Masculine Gender, Singular Number, Verb to the Subject मैं.

### Adverb

(1) Kind

(2) Modifies the verb.

**Example.**

राम कहाँ गया ?

कहाँ—Adverb of place, modifies the Verb  
गया ।

**EXERCISES**

1. Parse the words underlined in the following sentences :

१ राम ने बाण मे गजग को मारा ।

२ लोटा कुएँ में गिर गया ।

३ उम ने मुझे एक पुस्तक दी ।

४ बीम लड़के आगे हैं ।

५ यह किताब मेरी है ।

६ जो जमा करेगा सो वैसा पायगा ।

७ वह सोता होगा ।

८ आप कब वहाँ गये थे ।

**LESSON 57.****Syntax I,****CONCORD.**

Syntax is that aspect of Grammar which treats of the relationship of words when they are used in sentences and their arrangement.

Syntax is divided into two parts (1) Order of words. (2) Agreement.

### The Order of Words in Sentences

1. The Nominative comes first and the Verb last.

लड़के जाते हैं The boys are going.

लड़कियाँ पढ़ती हैं The girls are reading.

2. The Accusative comes between the Nominative and the Verb.

लड़के दूध पीते हैं। Boys drink milk.

लड़कियाँ पुस्तकें पढ़ती हैं girls read books.

3. The Dative generally comes before the Accusative.

उसने भिखारी को एक पैसा दिया।

He gave one piece to the beggar.

मैं तुम्हारे लिये मिठाई लाऊँगा।

I shall bring sweets for you.

4. The Instrumental and the Ablative Cases comes immediately before the Accusative.

राम ने बन्दूक से चिड़िया को मारा।

Ram killed the bird with his gun.

वह हाथी पर से गिर पड़ा।

He fell down from the elephant.

5. The Locative Case sometimes comes early in a sentence and sometime in the middle.

घर में कोई नहीं है । There is no one in the house,  
तुम्हारी जेब में क्या है ?

What is there in your pocket ?

नदी के तट पर एक बड़ा पेड़ है ।

There is a big tree on the bank of the river.

6. The Adjective is generally placed before the Noun.

काला घोड़ा      A black horse.

ऊँचा मकान      A big house.

काली टोपी      A black hat.

7. Interjection comes at the beginnig.

अहा ! कैसी सुन्दर रात है ।

Oh ! what a lovely night.

## EXERCISES

1. Correct the following sentences changing the order of words :

१ दौड़ता हूँ मैं ।

२ किताब लिलि पढ़ती है ।

३ खेलते हैं भाई बहिन एक साथ ।

४ है देखा मोर मैंने ।

५ गई सीता राम के साथ बन में ।

६ बज रहा है पियानो उस कमरे में ।

- ७ पढ़ी है वह पुस्तक तुमने ।  
 ८ दिये कुछ फल उसने मुझको ।  
 ९ कागज लाओ सफेद ।  
 १० खेल कैसा अच्छा है बाह !  
 ११ बहुत तेज चलती है रेजगाड़ी ।  
 १२ अच्छे तो हो मित्र !

## LESSON 58.

## Syntax II

## AGREEMENT .

1. When the Position ने or से is not used with the Subject the Verb agrees with it in Number and Gender. But a Plural Verb can be used for the sake of respect.

मैं पुस्तक पढ़ता हूँ I am reading a book.

वे बाज़ार को जाते हैं They are going to the market.

लूसी लिखती है Lucy is writing.

सूरज चमकता है The sun shines.

But मेरे पिता जी आते हैं My father is coming.

गुरु जी उसे बुलाते हैं The teacher is calling him.

2. If the Subject has ने with it and the Object is without को the Verb agrees with the Object in Number and Gender.

मैंने पांच आम खाये I ate five mangoes.

उसने रोटी खायी He ate bread.

8. If को is used with the Object, the Verb takes the form of the Masculine Singular.

मैंने किताब को पढ़ा I read the book.

हमने किताबों को पढ़ा We read the books.

लड़कों ने लड़कियों को देखा The boys saw the girls.

4. With the exception of the Perfect Tenses of Transitive Verbs in the Present and Past Tenses the Verb agrees with the Nominative in Number and Gender.

Present Tense लड़का खेलता है A boy is playing.

लड़के खेलते हैं Boys are playing.

लड़की खेलती है A girl is playing.

Past Tense लड़के खेलते थे Boys were playing.

लड़कियां खेलती थीं Girls were playing.

Future Tense लड़के खेलेंगे Boys will play.

लड़कियां खेलेंगी Girls will play.

But लड़के ने पुस्तक पढ़ी  
लड़की ने भात खाया

5. (a) If there are more than one Nominative the Verb agrees with the nearest in Number & Gender.

दो लड़के और तीन लड़कियां पैदा हुईं ।

Two sons and three daughter were born.

दस आदमी और पाँच स्त्रियां जा रही थी ।

Ten men and five women were going.

- (b) OR the Verb is placed in the Masculine Plural

सोहन और मोहन लिखते हैं ।

Sohan and mohrn are writing.

राम और सीता वन को गये ।

Ram and Sita went to the forest.

6. If two or more Nominatives (without ने) are disjoined by या or न, the Verb will be in the Singular:

राम या लक्ष्मण आता है ।

Ram or Lakshman is coming.

न वह आता है और न उसका भाई ।

Neither he nor his brother is coming.

7. When there are two or more Verbs in a sentence the Nominative is used only once:

देवदत्त रोटी खावेगा और दूध पीवेगा ।

Devadatt will eat bread and drink milk.



वह न पढ़ता है और न पढ़ने देता है ।

Neither he himself reads nor does he allow others to read.

8. When more than one pronoun of different Persons are used as Nominatives in a sentence the Verb agrees with the first Person. If there are only second and third person the Verb agrees with the second Person :

हम, तुम और मोहन चलेंगे ।

Mohan, You and I will go.

वह, तुम और हम खेलेंगे ।

He, you and we will play.

मोहन और तुम जाओगे ।

Mohan and you will go.

मैं और तुम खेलेंगे ।

You and I will play.

9. A Pronoun is a substitute word for a Noun. So it takes the Number and Gender of the Noun it stands for.

मैंने राम को बुलाया था पर वह नहीं आया ।

I called Ram but he did not come.

लड़कियाँ आने वाली थीं, पर वे नहीं आईं ।

Girls were expected to come but they did not come

10. Adjectives agree in Number and Gender with the Noun they qualify :

छोटा लड़का                      A small boy.

छोटे लड़के                      small boys.

छोटी लड़की                      A small girl.

छोटी लड़कियाँ                  small girls.

11. If there is only one Adjective to qualify more than one Noun, it agrees with the nearest Noun in Number and Gender.

छोटे लड़के और लड़कियाँ      small boys and girls.

छोटी लड़कियाँ और लड़के      small girls and boys.

### EXERCISES

1. Rewrite the following sentence after correcting the mistakes :

१ यह लड़की रुमाल सी रहा है ।

२ यह लड़का हाँकी खेल रहे हैं ।

३ हम स्कूल का जाता हूँ ।

४ तुम स्कूल को क्यों नहीं जाता है ।

- ५ धोबी कपड़े धो लाई है ।  
 ६ तुम यहाँ से चला जा ।  
 ७ वह तुम और मैं कलकत्ता जावेंगे ।  
 ८ मेरी पुस्तकें उसने ही चुरा लिया है ।  
 ९ राम बोला मैं नहीं जानती ।  
 १० गोरी लड़का अखबार पढ़ता है ।  
 ११ शेक्सपियर एक बहुत बड़ो कवि थे ।  
 १२ लड़की का पुस्तक वहाँ पड़ा है ।  
 १३ जो हम वहाँ जाऊँगा तो तुम भी मेरे साथ चलेगा ।  
 १४ उस ने वह भूला है ।  
 १५ राजा ने उसको पाँच रुपये दिया ।  
 १६ तुम क्या करेगा ।  
 १७ वह आदमी को बुलाओ ।  
 १८ इन में से कोई बुर है ।  
 १९ राम रावण को मारे ।  
 २० लड़की भात खाने मांगता है ।

## LESSON 59

### Common Errors

#### 100 Hindi Words for Dictation

We give below a list of 100 words which are very common but often spelt wrong.

1 अक्झा	26 लिखना	51 गाड़ी	76 अभी
2 खाता	27 लिफाफा	52 मझली	77 खड़ा
3 क्या	28 थक जाना	53 जल्दी	78 बीस
4 पढ़ता	29 दुकान	54 पहुँचा	79 बिल्ली
5 गया	30 थोड़ा	55 कड़ा	80 चूना
6 लड़कियाँ	31 खेत	56 पेड़	81 गई
7 स्त्री	32 छाता	57 कभी	82 मोठा
8 भी	33 पत्ता	58 दूध	83 मिठाई
9 चिड़ियाँ	34 मनुष्य	59 करूँगा	84 भीतर
10 गाय	35 पीछा	60 देखूँगा	85 नीला
11 चिल्लाता	36 थक	61 सिर	86 पीला
12 उन्हें	37 फूल	62 दिया	87 डाली
13 कुछ	38 भूख	63 कुत्ता	88 धूँ
14 था	39 कुछ	64 ऊँचा	89 फूल
15 हाथ	40 साथ	65 घूमता	80 छूना
16 बढ़ा	41 झूठ	66 तू	91 बाव
17 बेल	42 प्याला	67 नाचे	92 बूढ़ा
18 दौड़ना	43 चाय	68 चढ़ना	93 छट्टा
19 पकड़ना	44 बच्चा	69 चरना	94 पकड़ा
20 तुम्हारा	45 दाल	70 पूरा	95 पुस्तक
21 भेजना	46 भात	71 आगो	96 महीना
22 मुझे	47 दिन	72 डालना	97 हमारा
23 लकड़ी	48 कुर्सी	73 दूध	98 आना, जतरी
24 हथर	49 ताला	74 चिट्ठी	99 इकट्ठा
25 खोलना	50 घंटा	75 खड़ा	100 गधा, गदहा

आता	coming	आटा	flour
पिता	father	पीता	drinking
चरना	to graze	चढ़ना	to climb
कुली	porter	खली	open ( fem )
पुल्ल	bridge	फूल	flower
भार	time	भार	burden
सात	seven	साठ	sixty सात seven
सादी	simple ( fem )	शादी	wedding
भात	rice	वात	word
रोती	crying (fem)	रोटी	bread
तोता	parrot	टोटा	loss
मोती	pearl	मोटो	fat ( fem )
पर (पंख)	feather	पार	across, other side
बुरा	bad	बूढ़ा	old
बाग	garden	बाघ	tiger
कड़ा	hard, firm, dracelet	खड़ा	standing erect.
पता	address	पत्ता	leaf
चूना	lime	छूना	to touch
गढ़ा	buried	घड़ा	jar
पढ़ना	to lie	पढ़ना	to read
सास	mother-in-law	साँस	breath
मास	month	माँस	meat, flesh
बास	odour	बाँस	bamboo
शहर	city	शहद	honey

## LESSON 60

## Common Errors

- 1 आ is not changed to ए ( े ) with Postposition :

Incorrect लड़का को बुलाओ ।

Correct लड़के को बुलाओ ।

Incorrect बड़ा घोड़ा पर चढ़ो ।

Correct बड़े घोड़े पर चढ़ो ।

Note—Most of the Masculine Nouns and Adjectives ending in आ change into ए when they are followed by a Postposition,

2. आ is incorrectly changed,

Incorrect पाठशाले में जाओ ।

correct पाठशाला में जाओ ।

Incorrect बुढ़िये का घर कहाँ है ?

correct बुढ़िया का घर कहाँ है ?

NOTE—In the above sentences आ belonging to the Feminine Nouns is changed into ए. It should not be changed

- 3 Pronouns not changed with Postpositions:

Incorrect वह ने लिखा ।

Correct उसने लिखा ।

Incorrect मुझ के लिये पानी लाओ ।

Correct मेरे लिये पानी लाओ ।

NOTE--See the declensions of Pronoun and notice the changes in all cases.

#### 4. को is omitted:

Incorrect तुम क्या मिला ।

Correct तुमको क्या मिला ।

Incorrect वह क्या चाहिए ?

Correct उसको क्या चाहिए ?

#### ने is omitted :

Incorrect मैं उसको कहा ,

Correct मैंने उसको कहा ।

Incorrect मैं उसका घर देखा ।

Correct मैंने उसका घर देखा ।

NOTE--ने is used with the Nominative Case if the Verb is Transitive and made of Perfect Participle.

#### 6. ने is misused :

Incorrect मैंने बोला ।

Correct मैं बोला ।

Incorrect उसने भूल गया ।

Correct वह भूल गया ।

**Note**—बोलना, भूलना, बचना, लाना, and लेजाना are exceptions to the previous rule and ने should not be used with them in any case.

**7. Singular Verb is used with आप (your honour).**

Incorrect      आप कहाँ जाता है ?

Correct        आप कहाँ जाते हैं ?

**8. A Singular Verb is used with the honorific persons.**

Incorrect      मेरे पिता कल क़त्ता गया ।

Correct        मेरे पिता कलक़त्ता गये ।

**NOTE**--In Hindi Plural Verb is used with a Singular Subject to denote respect.

**9. Personal Pronoun for Reflexive अपना ( own, self ),**

Incorrect      वह उसकी पुस्तक पढ़ता है

Correct        वह अपनी पुस्तक पढ़ता है ।

Incorrect      तुम तुम्हारे घर जाओ ।

Correct        तुम अपने घर जाओ ।



Incorrect मैं मेरा काम करूंगा ।

Correct मैं अपना काम करूंगा ।

**Note--अपना** must be used in place of the Genitive of any other Persons when the Pronoun has a special reference to the Subject of the Verb.

#### 10. ह Omitted with Present Tense

Incorrect लड़का पढ़ता ।

Correct लड़का पढ़ता है ।

Incorrect तुम कहाँ जाता ।

Correct तुम कहाँ जाते हो ?

**NOTE--**But with Negative it is correct to say

तुम क्यों नहीं पढ़ते ?

वे चाय नहीं पीते ।

#### 11. Infinitive with सकना

Incorrect तुम जाने सकना ।

Correct तुम जा सकते हो ।

**NOTE**—Compound Verbs with सकना are formed with the root or stem not with the Infinitives. So it is जा सकना not जाने सकना । तुम is Plural and it should take a Plural Verb.

### 12. मांगना for चाहना

Incorrect मैं पढ़ना मांगता हूँ ।

Correct मैं पढ़ना चाहता हूँ ।

**NOTE**—मांगना means 'to beg', 'to ask for', it does not mean 'to want', 'to desire'. A servant may correctly say साहिब एक थाला चाय मांगते हैं ।

### 13. To have translated as 'मिलना' or 'पाना',:

Incorrect मैंने दो हाथ पाया have two hands

Correct मेरे दो हाथ हैं " "

Incorrect मैं को एक पुस्तक मिला I have a book.

Correct मेरे पास एक पुस्तक है । " "

**NOTE**--The Hindi construction particularly differs from the English, in case of the uses of has and have. ( Revise Lesson 49 )

## EXERCISES

1. Correct and rewrite the following :

- १ हम कहे थे तू मत जाओ ।
- २ मैंने उसको बोला ।
- ३ हम घोड़े पर जाना माँगता है ।
- ४ हमारे से यह काम नहीं होने सकता ।
- ५ अपना लड़का को अच्छा तरह समझाओ ।
- ६ मोहन का पिता भोजन कर रहा है ।
- ७ आप कहाँ गया ?
- ८ कृष्ण ने द्वारका गये ।
- ९ तुम तुम्हारा काम करो ।
- १० वह आदमी को बुलाओ ।
- ११ हव्से से कागज उड़ गया ।
- १२ वह उस के भाई को देखा ।
- १३ लड़को ने उसको देखना के लिये गये हैं ।
- १४ वह पाँच बेटा पाया ।
- १५ क्या तुम यह काम काम करने सकता ?



## APPENDIX. GRAMMATICAL TERMS IN HINDI

वर्णमाला	Alphabet	सर्वनाम	Pronoun
अक्षर or वर्ण	Letter	विशेषण	Adjective
स्वर	Vowel	क्रिया	Verb
व्यंजन	Consonant	क्रिया विशेषण	Adverb
अनुस्वार ( ¨ )	Anusvar or Nasal	संबंध बोधक	अव्यय Postposition
अनुतासिक ( ¨ )	Anunask or Nasalization	संयोजक ,,	Conjunction
or चन्द्रबिन्दु		विभाजक ,,	Disjunction
विसर्ग	Visarg, The final aspira- tion.	विस्मयादिवोधक	Interjection
		विभक्ति	Case suffix
		उपसर्ग	Prefix
दण ( ˆ )	A closed consonant	प्रत्यय	Affix
		लिङ्ग	Gender
ह्रस्व	Short Vowel	पुलिङ्ग	Masculine
दीर्घ	Long ,,	स्त्रीलिङ्ग	Feminine
मात्रा	A syllable or 'instant'	वचन	Number
		एकवचन	Singular
संयुक्त अक्षर	Conjunct letter	बहुवचन	Plural
व्याकरण	Grammar	कारक	Case
संज्ञा	Noun	वृत्ता	Nominative

कर्म	Accusative	पुरुष	Person
करण	Instrumental	उत्तम	First
सम्प्रदान	Dative	मध्यम	Second
अपादान	Ablative	अन्य	Third
सम्बन्ध	Genitive	वाच्य	Voice
अधिकरण	Locative	कर्तृवाच्य	Active Voice
सम्बोधन	Vocative	कर्मवाच्य	Passive Voice
अकर्मक	Intransitive	पूर्वकालिक क्रिया	Conjunctive
काल	Tense		Participle
वर्तमान	Present	कर्तृवाचक संज्ञा	Noun of
भूत	Past		Agency
भविष्यत्	Future	प्रेरणार्थक क्रिया	Causal Verb



## **PART II.**



### **IDIOMS AND PROVERBS.**



“Idioms are conventional signs, they mean what they are intended to mean by the speaker and understood to mean by the hearer.,,”

—Henry Bradley.

## 100 USEFUL IDIOMS.

- मुहावर
1. अंगुली उठाना To criticise ( LIT. to raise one's finger)
  2. अकल खर्च करना To use one's own sense.
  3. अफल मार जाना To lose one's senses.
  4. अच्छा लगना To please.
  5. आँख आना To have inflamed eyes.
  6. आँख उठाकर न देखना To be very proud, to be disdainful.
  7. आँख का तारा Dearest, darling (LIT. the apple of one's eye ) used for son.
  8. आँख खुलना To rouse from sleep , to realise.
  9. आँख चुराना To avoid the sight of an, other person ( LIT. to steel eyes )
  10. आँख दिखाना To frighten, to brow-beat , to look with anger.
  11. आँख फूटना To be blind , to lose one's sight.
  12. आँख फेरना or फेर लेना To withdraw one's favour or affection from any one (Lit. to turn away one's face)

- |                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| 13. आँख बंद कर लेना     | To neglect, to take no account of, to die            |
| 14 आँख भौं चढ़ाना       | To frown.  |
| 15. आँख मारना           | To wink.   |
| 16. आँख से गिरना        | To be out of favour ( LIT to fall from one's eyes. ) |
| 17. आँखों में धूल डालना | To throw dust into on's eyes, to decieve, to cheat.  |
| 18 आंसू भर लाना         | To weep ( lit. to bring tears into the eyes)         |
| 19 आंसू पोंछना          | To wipe away the tears, to console.                  |
| 20 आगा पीछा करना        | To hesitate, to waver, to linger.                    |
| 21 आग बबूला होना        | To flare up.   |
| 22 आग होना              | To be very angree.                                   |
| 23 आग लगना              | To break out (fire)                                  |
| 24 आ जकल करना           | To evade, to put off.                                |
| 25 आदमी बनाना           | To teach good manners.                               |
| 26 आना कानी करना        | To connive at, to make an excuse.                    |
| 27 चल्तू बनाना          | To befool, to cheat.                                 |
| 28 कंठ करना             | To get by heart.                                     |



- 29 कमर कसना To prepare, to get ready.
- 30 कमर टूटना To be broken, to lose spirit  
to be hopeless.
- 31 कलेजे पर सांप लोटना To suffer envy or jealousy  
to be distressed at another's  
success.
- 32 कमम खाकर कहना To say on oath.
- 33 काँटों में घसीटना To drag into difficulties.
- 34 कान काटना To surpass, to outwit,  
(lit. to cut off one's ears).
- 35 कान देना To listen.
- 36 कान खड़ा करना To be alarmed.
- 37 कान में अंगुली देना To turn a deaf ear.
- 38 कान पर जूँ न रेंगना To be careless.
- 39 काग चलाना To carry on.
- 40 काम चोर होना To shirk work.
- 41 काम तमाम करना To kill, to finish.
- 42 खाक में मिलना To be ruined.
- 43 खून करना To murder, to assassinate  
to waste.
- 44 खिल्ली उड़ाना To make fun of, to ridicule.
- 45 गुप हँकना To indulge in gossip.
- 46 गला बैठना To become hoarse

- 47 चाव पर नमक छिड़कना To aggravate the trouble  
(lit. to 'apply salt to the wound').
- 48 बल बसना To die,
- 49 चिकनी चुपड़ी बातें करना To flatter, (lit. to use oily speech).
- 50 चुन करना To keep quiet
- 51 जान पर खेलना To risk one's life,
- 52 जी चुराना To shirk work.
- 53 टक्कर खाना To be dashed against any thing to suffer loss or damage.
- 54 टका सा जवाब देना To give a flat reply.
- 55 टाँग अड़ाना To meddle with another's affairs, to poke one's nose into
- 56 ठाकर खाना To stumble.
- 57 डंके की चोट कहना To declare publicly.
- 58 ताली बजाना To clap hands,
- 59 तीन तेरह होना Scattered, dispersed.
- 60 तीन पाँच करना To quarrel,
- 61 थर थर काँपना To tremble, to quiver.
- 62 दौत तले अँगुली दबाना To be amazed, to wonder.
- 63 दौत खट्टे करना To dishearten, to defeat, to teach a lesson, to sour the teeth .

64 दाल गलना	To avail or be effective, to be successful.
65 दाल में काला	Something wrong
66 दुम दगकर भागना	To turn tail.
67 दुःख भोगना	To suffer.
68 धीरज रखना	To have patience.
69 नमक हलाल निकलना	To turn out faithful.
70 नमक हगम निकलना	To turn out unfaithful.
71 नाक काटना	To humiliate (to cut one's nose).
72 नाकों दम करना	To worry.
73 नो दो ग्यारह होना	To run away, to disappear.
74 पानी में आग लगाना	To revive a contention. which has subsided.
75 पेट पालना	To live from hand to mouth.
76 पेट भरना	To receive enough to live upon, to be satisfied.
77 पीठ दिखाना	To flee.
78 पेट में चूहे कूदना	To feel very hungry.
79 पैसा उड़ाना	To spend extravagantly.
80 फूटी आँखों न भाना	To dislike.
81 फूला न समाना	To be overjoyed.
82 बगुला भगत होना	To pretend, to be a hypocrite.
83 बात पूछना	To enquire after one's welfare, to receive.

84. बाल बाँका न होना To be without the least harm or inconvenience.
85. बिगड़ना To be annoyed.
86. बिदा लेना To take leave,
87. मन का जड्डू खाना To build castles in the air,
88. मुँह काला होना To be disgraced.
89. मुँह खोलना To speak (LIT. to open the mouth.)
90. मुँह बनाना To make faces to mock.
91. मुँह में पानी भर आना To make the mouth water,
92. मोल तोल करना To bargain,
93. राह देखना To wait.
94. सिर में चक्कर आना To have headache giddiness
95. सूखकर काँटा होना To become very weak,
96. हवा खाने जाना To go for a walk or riding.
97. हवा से बात करना To run very fast.
98. हाथ खींचना To refrain. to abstain.
99. हाथ मलकर रह जाना To regret, to repent, to lament.
100. हाथ मारना To acquire. to succeed.

## 50 PROVERBS

## कहावतें

- १ एक पन्थ दो काज ।
- 1 To kill two birds with one stone.
- २ जिस का लाठो उस की भैंस ।
- 2 Might is right.
- ३ जब तक सौंस तब तक आस ।
- 3 While there is life, there is hope.
- ४ जो गरजता है वह बरसता नहीं ।
- 4 Barking dogs seldom bite.
- ५ जैसा करोगे वैसा पाओगे ।
- 5 As you sow, so shall you reap.
- ६ डूबते को तिनके का सहारा ।
- 6 A drowning man catches at a straw.
- ७ आप मियां मिट्टू न बनो ।
- 7 Self-praise is no recommendation.
- ८ अपने दही को कोई खट्टा नहीं कहता ।
- 8 No one looks to his own faults.
- ९ एक हाथ से ताली नहीं बजती ।
- 9 It takes two to quarrel,

- १० जै पे को तैसा ।
- 10 Tit for tat.
- ११ नाच न जाने आंगन टेढ़ा ।
- 11 A bad workman quarrels with his tools.
- १२ ऊँची दूकान फोका पकवान ।
- 12 Much cry little wool.
- १३ नौनगद न तेरह उधार ।
- 13 A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.
- १४ ख्याली पोलाव पकाना ।
14. To bulid castles in the air.
- १५ जहाँ चाह है वहाँ राह है ।
15. Where there is a will, there is a way.
- १६ चोर चोर मौसिआत भाई ।
- 16 Birds of a feather flock together.
- १७ मित्र वही है जो बिपत्ति में काम आवे ।
- 17 A friend in need is a friend indeed,
- १८ चोर की दाढ़ी में तिनका ।
- 18 A guilty mind is always suspicious.
- १९ जल्दी काम शैतान का ।
- 19 Haste makes waste (Hurry makes bad curry)

- २० रूग्या में रूग्या होता है ।  
 20 Money begets money.  
 २१ बिना परिश्रम धन नहीं मिलता ।  
 21 No pains no gains.  
 २२ खट्टे अंगूर कौन खाय ।  
 22 Grapes are sour  
 २३ काम प्याग कि चाम प्याग ।  
 23 Handsome is that handsome does.  
 २४ दूर का ढोल सुनावना ।  
 24 Distant drums sound well.  
 २५ जैमादेश वैसा भेष ।  
 25 Do in Rome as the Romans do.  
 २६ बुद्धिमान् को इशारा काफी ।  
 26 A word to the wise.  
 २७ जो कुछ बचा सो ही कमाया ।  
 27 A penny saved is a penny gained.  
 २८ पेट में डाढ़ी है ।  
 28 An old head on young shoulders.  
 २९ चोरी का गुड़ मीठा ।  
 29 Stolen waters are sweet.

- ३० आगे दौड़ पीछे चोड़ ।  
 30 Fast run, fast lose.  
 ३१ कल करे सो आज कर ।  
 31 Do not put off till to-morrow what you can do to lay.  
 ३२ दुख के बिना सुख नहीं होता ।  
 32 There is no rose without a thorn.  
 ३३ आप भला तो जग भला ।  
 33 Good mind, good find.  
 ३४ घमण्डी का तिर नीचा ।  
 34 Pride goes before a fall.  
 ३५ मुंह में राम गम बगल में छुरी ।  
 35 Beads about the neck and devil in the heart.  
 ३६ गया वक्त फिर आता नहीं ।  
 36 The past cannot come back again.  
 ३७ बन्दर क्या जाने अदरक का स्वाद ।  
 37 The blind cannot judge colours.  
 ३८ बने बने के सब कोई साथी ।  
 38 Friends are plenty when the purse is full.  
 ३९ अब पछताये क्या होत है जब चिड़िया चुग गई खेत ।  
 39 No use in crying over spilt milk.



- ४० देखिये ऊँट किस करवट बैठता है ।  
 40 Which way the wind blows !  
 ४१ साँच को आँच नहीं ।  
 41 Pure gold does not fear the flame.  
 Clear conscience fears no accusation.  
 ४२ उलटा चोर कोतवाल को डाँटे ।  
 42 A thief threatens the constable.  
 ४३ नया धोबी कपड़े में कलप देता है ।  
 43 A new broom sweeps well.  
 ४४ खोथा चना बाजे बना ।  
 44 An empty vessel makes much noise.  
 ४५ बूँद बूँद से घट भरे ।  
 45 Many a little makes a mickle.  
 ४६ दूध का जला छाँड़ को फूँक फूँक कर पीता है ।  
 46 The burnt child dreads the fire.  
 ४७ जितने मुँह उतनी बात ।  
 47 As many men so many minds.  
 ४८ जितनी चादर देखो उतना ही पैर फैलाओ ।  
 48 ~~Put~~ your coat according to your cloth.  
 ४९ ~~मूँह~~ अपने घर के सब राजा ।  
 49 The mouse is the mistress of her hole.  
 ५० अहमद की पगड़ी महमूद के सिर पर ।  
 50 To rob ~~him~~ to pay Paul.



# **PART III**

## **TRANSLATION**



- 50 Exercises from English into Hindi with notes on difficult words and phrases.

## EXERCISE 1.

A. What is this ?

B. It is a *pen*<sup>1</sup>.

A. *Whose*<sup>2</sup> pen is it ?

B. It is my pen.

A. What will you *do*<sup>3</sup> with it ?

B. I shall write with it.

A. *On what*<sup>4</sup> will you write ?

B. On *paper*<sup>5</sup>.

A. *Which*<sup>6</sup> paper ?

B. This paper.

A. *Pick*<sup>7</sup> up your pen. *Put*<sup>8</sup> your pen down.  
Pick up your book- Put your book down.

B. I pick up my pen. I put it down. I pick up my book. I put it down. I *hold*<sup>9</sup> it in my *right*<sup>10</sup> hand. I hold it in my *left*<sup>10</sup> hand.

10 बायें

5 किस 6 उठा जो 7 नीचे रख दो 8 पकड़ता हूँ 9 दाहिने  
1 कलम (F.) 2 किसकी 3 किस पर 4 कागज (M.)

## EXERCISE 2.

When do you go to school ? I go to school at *half-past ten*<sup>1</sup>. Do you go to school *every day*<sup>2</sup> ? Yes, I go to school every day. But I do not go *on Sunday*<sup>3</sup>. The school is *closed*<sup>4</sup> on Sunday. *In what class*<sup>5</sup> do you read ? I read in *class V*. *How many*<sup>6</sup> boys are there in your class ? There are twenty boys in our class.

1 साढ़े दस बजे 2 प्रति दिन or रोज 3 रविवार or ऐतवार को 4 बन्द रहता है 5 किस दर्जे में ( श्रेणी F. में ) 6 कितने ।

## EXERCISE 3.

*He has a bad cold*<sup>1</sup>. Give him water to drink. See that the water is *warm*<sup>2</sup>. Is this water *very cold*<sup>3</sup> ? Yes, this water is very cold ? Put the water in a *pan*<sup>4</sup>. *Boil*<sup>5</sup> it on the fire. You cannot drink cold water now. You may drink *tea*<sup>6</sup>. Will you eat some food ? Yes, give me some *meat*<sup>7</sup>.

1 उसको बहुत सर्दी होमाई है or जुकाम होगया है 2 गरम 3 बहुत ठंडा 4 कढ़ाई F. 5 उबालो 6 चाय 7 मांस or गोश्त ।

## EXERCISE 4.

*It is very hot to-day<sup>1</sup>. There are clouds<sub>2</sub> in the skys. It will rain<sup>4</sup> very soon. We shall not go out to play. What will you do then ? I shall read my new book. It is a story<sup>5</sup>-book. There are lovely pictures<sup>6</sup> in it. I had it from my father. He gave me the book as a prize<sup>7</sup>.*

1 आज बहुत गरमी है 2 बादल 3 आसमान 4 पानी  
बरसेगा 5 कहानी 6 सुन्दर सुन्दर चित्र (तस्वीरें f.)  
7 इनाम में ।

## EXERCISE 5.

*This man is dumb<sup>1</sup>. He cannot talk. He is also deaf.<sup>2</sup> He cannot hear. That man is lame.<sup>3</sup> He cannot walk. That is a blind<sup>4</sup> man. He cannot see. We see by the light of day.<sup>5</sup> But it is night to him. He cannot read and write. They are all poor men.<sup>6</sup> Be good and kind to them.<sup>7</sup>*

1 गूंगा 2 बहरा 3 लंगड़ा 4 अंधा 5 दिन की  
रोशनी में 6 गरीब आदमी 7 उन पर दया रखो और उनके  
साथ अच्छा बर्ताव करो ।

## EXERCISE 6.

Why has the man come here ? He has come to *sell*<sup>1</sup> fruits. What has he on his head ? He has a *basket*<sup>2</sup> on his head. What is in the basket ? He has *oranges*,<sup>3</sup> *plan'ains*,<sup>4</sup> and *grapes*.<sup>5</sup> I shall buy some grapes. Will you buy anything ? Yes, I shall buy some oranges. I *hope*<sup>6</sup> he will sell them *cheap*<sup>7</sup>. What is the *price*<sup>8</sup> of your oranges ? You may have an orange for a pice. Give me four oranges. Here is an *annu*<sup>10</sup> for the four oranges.

1 बेचने 2 टोकरी *f.* 3 नारंगियां *f.* 4 केले 5 अंगूर  
6 समझता हूँ or आशा करता हूँ 7 सस्ता 8 दाम 9 पैसा  
10 आना ।

## EXERCISE 7.

I have *just*<sup>1</sup> had some *lunch*.<sup>2</sup> What did you have for lunch ? *Chapaties*,<sup>3</sup> rice, *curry*,<sup>4</sup> dal, fruits, *rice-pudding*.<sup>5</sup> I *do not like*<sup>6</sup> meat.<sup>7</sup> *Neither*<sup>8</sup> do I. With *tea*<sup>9</sup> I like *cakes*<sup>10</sup>, *biscuits*,<sup>11</sup> bread and *butter*.<sup>12</sup> But I *love*<sup>13</sup> milk and fruits *best*.<sup>14</sup> So do I. *They make my mouth water*.<sup>15</sup>

1 अभी 2 भोजन 3 चपाती 4 तरकारी 5 खीर 6 नहीं  
पसंद करता 7 मांस (गोشت) 8 न 9 चाय 10 केक 11 बिस्कुट  
12 मक्खन 13 पसंद करता हूँ 14 अधिक 15 उनको देख  
कर मेरे मुँह में पानी भर आता है ।

## EXERCISE 8.

What a *fine old*<sup>1</sup> tree this is ! I think it must be a hundred years old. How thick the *trunk*<sup>2</sup> is ! How far the branches *spread out*<sup>3</sup> on all sides ! How *pretty*<sup>4</sup> the leaves look ! Now they are *bright*<sup>5</sup> and green. But in a little while they will get yellow and *brown*<sup>6</sup>. Then they will get quite dry and fall on the ground.

1 बढ़िया और पुराना 2 तना 3 फैली हुई है 4 सुन्दर  
5 चमकदार 6 भूरे ।

## EXERCISE 9.

To-day, let us take a walk<sup>1</sup> in the bazar. But be *careful*<sup>2</sup> ! there are many people, horses, dogs and cows. What a *crowd*<sup>3</sup> ! How many shops there are ! Look, John, here is a *sweet-shop*<sup>4</sup>. Let us buy some sweets. I have two pice. Which sweets shall we buy ? No, not these. They are very *heavy*<sup>5</sup> and we shall get *few*<sup>6</sup>. Let us buy those. They are *light*<sup>7</sup>, so we shall get many for our pice. Please give us *two pice worth*<sup>8</sup> of these light sweets. Thank you ! Come, we shall eat them under that tree.

1 घूमने चलें 2 सावधान (होशियार) रहना 3 भीड़  
4 मिठाई की दुकान 5 भारी 6 थोड़े 7 हल्के 8 दो पैसे की  
9 धन्यवाद ।

## EXERCISE 10.

This evening we are *running races*<sup>1</sup> The big boys are running from the school to the river. But we small boys cannot run *so far*.<sup>2</sup>

We shall run *only one hundred yards*.<sup>3</sup> That is not very far. But it is far enough for us I love running races Don't you? My big brother is running in the race. He has *long legs*<sup>4</sup> and can run very fast. I *hope*<sup>5</sup> *he wins a prize*.<sup>6</sup> The *Head master*<sup>7</sup> is giving prizes to the *best runners*<sup>8</sup> in each class. These will be very good prizes.

1 दौड़ों में दौड़ रहे हैं 2 इतनी दूर 3 केवल एक सौ गज  
4 लम्बी लम्बी टांगें 5 आशा (उम्मीद) करता हूँ 6 उसको  
इनाम मिलेगा 7 हेडमास्टर (प्रधानाध्यापक) 8 सब से अच्छे  
दौड़ने वाले को ।

## EXERCISE 11.

Would you like *to have a swing*<sup>1</sup>? O, yes. I would. But where is the swing? There it is on the branch of that tree. Who *put*<sup>2</sup> it there? I did. How, did you do it? I climbed the tree and *tied up*<sup>3</sup> the rope to a branch. Can you climb *such a big tree as that*<sup>4</sup>? O, yes, I can. I can climb like a monkey. Come along. Sit on the swing. I *shall swing*<sup>5</sup> you. *Take care*<sup>6</sup>. I am going to give you a *push*<sup>7</sup> from behind. One two, three, go.

1 झूला झूलना 2 लगाया है 3 बांधी 4 इतने बड़े पेड़  
पर 5 झुलाऊँगा 6 होशियार ! 7 बक्का ।



## EXERCISE 12.

Mary is a *naughty*<sup>1</sup> little girl. She is so *lazy*.<sup>2</sup> She never gets up *early in the morning*<sup>3</sup>. I like to get up early in the morning. The cock crows, the clock *strikes*<sup>4</sup> six, and I wake up.

But Mary *never*<sup>5</sup> gets up at six. She gets up at seven. Her mother *often asks*<sup>6</sup> her to get up and get out of bed. But she *stays in bed*<sup>7</sup> *all the time*.<sup>8</sup> So she is *called*<sup>9</sup> lazy Mary. A song<sup>10</sup> is written about her. *This is how it goes*.<sup>11</sup>

1 नटखट 2 आलसी 3 भोर में (तड़के) 4 बजाती है  
5 कभी नहीं 6 कहा करती है 7 सोती रहती है 8 सदा  
9 कहलाती है (उसका नाम है) 10 गाना 11 यह इस प्रकार है

## EXERCISE 13.

Here is a *stream*.<sup>1</sup> It is a small stream. There is a *plank*<sup>2</sup> over it. A dog *was crossing*<sup>3</sup> it by the plank. He had a *piece*<sup>4</sup> of meat in his mouth. He looked into the water. He saw in the water a dog *like himself*<sup>5</sup>. That dog on the plank was a *greedy*<sup>6</sup> dog. He opened his mouth *to bite*<sup>7</sup> the dog in the water. He *wanted*<sup>8</sup> to take his meat. But he did not get it. He *only*<sup>9</sup> *lost*<sup>10</sup> his own meat. It *fell*<sup>11</sup> into the water.

1 नाला 2 तख्ता 3 पार कर रहा था 4 टुकड़ा 5 अपनी तरह का 6 लालची 7 काटने के लिए 8 चाहता था 9 केवल 10 खो दिया 11 गिर पड़ा ।

## EXERCISE 14.

The *Japanese*<sup>1</sup> are very *clever*<sup>2</sup> and *skilful*<sup>3</sup> people. They live in Japan. Japan is a *beautiful country*<sup>4</sup> with *lovely*<sup>5</sup> flowers, gardens and high hills.

The Japanese are very clever *farmers*<sup>6</sup>, *workmen*<sup>7</sup> and *fishermen*<sup>8</sup>. Japan is an *island*<sup>9</sup>. It has the *sea*<sup>10</sup> all round<sup>11</sup> it. So the Japanese live<sup>12</sup> mostly<sup>13</sup> on fish and rice. Rice *needs*<sup>14</sup> a lot of water in a *warm*<sup>15</sup> place. The Japanese grow<sup>16</sup> much rice in summer and *wheat*<sup>17</sup> in winter<sup>18</sup>.

1 जापानी 2 चतुर ( होशियार ) 3 कुशी 4 सुन्दर देश  
5 खूबसूरत (सुन्दर) 6 किसान 7 कारीगर 8 मछुए 9 टापू  
10 समुद्र 11 चारों ओर 12 जीते हैं (खाते हैं) 13 अधिक-  
तर (ज्यादातर) 14 जरूरत होती है 15 गरम 16 उपजाते हैं  
17 गेहूँ 18 जाड़ा।

## EXERCISE 15.

( i ) It is night time. The sun *has set*<sup>1</sup> and its light *does not reach us*<sup>2</sup> but *still*<sup>3</sup> the sky is not *quite dark*<sup>4</sup> because many *stars*<sup>5</sup> have come out. *By reason*<sup>6</sup> of these stars it is somewhat light.

(ii) Well, how many of these stars will there be ? Can you *count*<sup>7</sup> them ? No, they are so *numerous*<sup>8</sup> that you cannot count them. Some of them are large and *brilliant*<sup>9</sup> and some are small and less brilliant.

(iii) The stars are very far off and *hence*<sup>10</sup> *appear*<sup>11</sup> quite small. Were they not so far off, they would appear to us large and brilliant *as*<sup>12</sup> the sun.

( S. C. 1922 )

1 छिप गया है 2 हम तक नहीं पहुँचती 3 अभी 4 बिल-कुल काला 5 तारे 6 के कारण 7 गिनना 8 इतने अधिक 9 चमकदार 10 इसलिए 11 दिखाई देते हैं 12 की तरह ।

### EXERCISE 16.

India is a country of *birds, beasts*<sup>1</sup>, *corn*<sup>2</sup> *fruits and flowers*<sup>3</sup>. We can see *all kinds*<sup>4</sup> of animals in the *Zoo*<sup>5</sup>. Parrots are lovely birds. They are of *all colours*<sup>6</sup>, but *most of them*<sup>7</sup> are green. Some of them have *reddish feathers*<sup>8</sup> at the top. Their beak is *curved*<sup>9</sup> or hooked. It is very *strong*<sup>10</sup>. It *hurts*<sup>11</sup> us very much when a parrot bites us. Parrots like grain, gram, pears, and other fruits. They can fly very fast. If they hear the same words again and again, they can repeat them too.

1 पशु पक्षियों 2 अन्न 3 फल-फूलों 4 सब तरह के 5 चिड़ियाघर 6 सब रंग के होते हैं 7 अधिकतर 8 कुछ लाल लाल पंख 9 टेढ़ी 10 मजबूत 11 दुःख होता है ।

## EXERCISE 17.

*On becoming rich*<sup>1</sup> he left his village and went to live in *Allahabad*.<sup>2</sup> He *obtained*<sup>3</sup> a large house and began to live *in great style*<sup>4</sup>. His *wife*<sup>5</sup> and his two sons and *their wives*<sup>6</sup> and his little daughter lived with him. He had many servants, a *carriage*<sup>7</sup> and a *pair of horses*.<sup>8</sup> But three months had not *elapsed*<sup>9</sup> before he *fell very ill*.<sup>10</sup>

( J. C. 1929 )

1 धनी होने पर 2 इलाहाबाद 3 ले लिया 4 बड़े ठाट-चाट से 5 स्त्री 6 पुतोहुएँ (लड़कों की पत्नियाँ) 7 गाड़ी 8 घोड़ों की जोड़ी 9 बीते थे 10 बहुत बीमार पड़ा ।

## EXERCISE 18.

(a) Early in the morning *Akbar*<sup>1</sup> and his son with *Birbal*<sup>2</sup>, went *hunting*<sup>3</sup>, when the sun *arose*<sup>4</sup>, Akbar gave Birbal his *cloak*<sup>5</sup> to carry. The *prince*<sup>6</sup> did *likewise*<sup>7</sup>. Then Akbar said ; “you have a donkey’s *load*<sup>8</sup>.” Birbal replied, “No, a two donkey’s load. .

( J. C. 1933. )

(a) 1 अकबर 2 बीरबल 3 शिकार खेलने 4 निकला  
5 अंगरखा 6 शाहजादे ने 7 ऐसा ही 8 बोभा ।

### EXERCISE 19.

Once there was a cock. It was an *old bird*<sup>1</sup> and could not see well. And there was a cat which wanted to eat it. One day the cat went to it, and said, 'How you *crow and crow*<sup>2</sup> every night !' Why, I cannot sleep ? I will *kill you*.<sup>3</sup> But the cock said, 'I never crow at night. I crow early in the morning. Then every one *should get up*<sup>4</sup>'. 'Come, come,' said the cat. 'I cannot talk *any more*<sup>5</sup>. I want my food, and cats *do not live upon words*<sup>6</sup>'. And it killed the cock.

Matric. 1939.

1 बूढ़ा पक्षी 2 बांग देना (मुर्गे का बोलना) 3 मार डालूंगा  
4 उठ जाना चाहिए 5 अधिक or ज्यादा 6 बातों से पेट नहीं भरता ।

### EXERCISE 20.

One evening, *as*<sup>1</sup> little *Prince*<sup>2</sup> Rama was in his *mother's arms*<sup>3</sup>, the moon rose in the *East*<sup>4</sup>.

She looked very bright, and Rāma *put out*<sup>5</sup> his little hands for her. But she was far, far away, and Rāma could not get her. So he began to cry. He cried and he cried. 'My son,' said his mother, 'the moon is very far away. Here are some *pretty things*<sup>6</sup>. Play with them.' But Rāma would not look at them, and *still cried*<sup>7</sup> for the moon.

Matric 1938.

1 जब 2 राजकुमार 3 मां की गोद में 4 पूर्व में चांद निकला 5 बढ़ाये 6 बढ़िया बढ़िया चीजें 7 रोता रहा ।

### EXERCISE 21.

We cannot see *God*<sup>1</sup>, but He sees us. He knows all that we do. He *takes care*<sup>2</sup> of us. He is *kind*<sup>3</sup> to every thing that he has made. We should try to *please*<sup>4</sup> him. We should not *lie*<sup>5</sup> or steal, or do *anything else*<sup>6</sup> that He *hates*<sup>7</sup>.

How good God is to me ! I must love Him and *praise*<sup>8</sup> Him. I will *pray*<sup>9</sup> to Him to keep me from all *sin*<sup>10</sup>. Then I shall be happy and good.

1 ईश्वर 2 रक्षा करता है 3 दया रखता है 4 प्रसन्न रखने or खुश करने 5 झूठ बोलना 6 और कोई काम 7 घृणा (नफरत) करता है 8 प्रशंसा 9 प्रार्थना करूंगा 10 पाप ।

## EXERCISE 22

The *earth*<sup>1</sup> goes round the sun once in a year. This *motion*<sup>2</sup> causes the *seasons*.<sup>3</sup> In summer we see the sun overhead. The heat is very great now. People *can hardly work*<sup>4</sup> in the field at noon. *Tanks*<sup>5</sup> and wells dry up, and people cannot get drinking water easily. But mangoes and *jack-fruits*<sup>6</sup> ripen at this time, and we eat them *with great relish*.<sup>7</sup> Matric 1939.

1 पृथिवी 2 गति or चाल 3 ऋतुएं 4 मुश्किल से काम कर सकते हैं 5 तालाब 6 कटहल 7 मजे से or स्वाद से ।

## EXERCISE 23.

One day as Satis was walking down the street, he saw a *gentleman*<sup>1</sup> drop a *bundle of notes*.<sup>2</sup> Satis picked it up and went after the gentleman, who *got into a carriage and drove away*.<sup>3</sup> Satis began to run after the carriage, and *managed to keep it in sight*<sup>4</sup> till it stopped before a large house. Satis came up, and *held out*<sup>5</sup> the bundle of notes before the gentleman.

Matric 1936.

1 भले आदमी को 2 नोटों का पुलिन्दा 3 गाड़ी में बैठ कर चला गया 4 तब तक उस पर दृष्टि रख सका 5 बढ़ा दिया ।

## EXERCISE 24.

When I was fourteen I was sent away to a school in a large town *between 40 and 50 miles away*.<sup>1</sup> I was a poor *friendless*<sup>2</sup> boy, my parents were both dead, I had no brother and my *only*<sup>3</sup> sister was married and living far away. I had one *uncle, my mother's brother*,<sup>4</sup> who *was comparatively wealthy*.<sup>5</sup> To save himself the *trouble*,<sup>6</sup> of *looking after*<sup>7</sup> me he paid for my being sent away to school. In the town to which I went two or three *distant relations*<sup>8</sup> lived but I saw little of them. They lived a *couple of miles*<sup>9</sup> away from the school and did not seem *eager*<sup>10</sup> for me to visit them, so the only friends I had were my *school-fellows*.<sup>11</sup>

( S. C. 1936)

1 चाबीस पचा मीलस दूर 2 असहाय 3 इकलौती  
4 मामा 5 कुछ धनी 6 कष्ट 7 देख रेख करने के 8 दूर के  
नातेदार or रिश्तेदार 9 एक कोस पर 10 उत्सुक 11 सहपाठी

## EXERCISE 25

On *the following day*<sup>1</sup> when Ram Chand got back from school. *he was told*<sup>2</sup> that Kirpa Ram had sent to say to him that he and some friends *were going*<sup>3</sup> that night in a boat to catch fish. Would Ram Chand go with them ? He *was indeed*<sup>4</sup>



*delighted.*<sup>5</sup> It was the very thing he had wanted for a long time. He ran off to get food *to take with him,*<sup>6</sup> and to put on his big coat, and in five minutes he was at the *edge*<sup>7</sup> of the *lake.*<sup>8</sup>

1 दूसरे दिन 2 उसको बतलाया गया 3 जायेंगे 4 तो  
5 खुरा खा 6 साथ ले जाने के लिए 7 किनारे 8 झील ।

### EXERCISES 26

The village was *somewhat*<sup>1</sup> small it was not on the *main road*<sup>2</sup> and was six miles from a *railway station.*<sup>3</sup> there was no school, no post office. The only *brick building*<sup>4</sup> was a large house in which the *landlord*<sup>5</sup> lived; the other residents lived in *mudhouses*<sup>6</sup> or *sheds*<sup>7</sup> and were very poor. A few of the people were *Mohammedans*<sup>8</sup> but most of them were *Hindoo* or *members of the untouchable classes.*<sup>9</sup> There was a *tiny temple,*<sup>10</sup> old and *broken,*<sup>11</sup> and a *stone idol*<sup>12</sup> under a tree just outside the village,

( S. C. 1932 )

1 कुछ 2 मुख्य सड़क पर 3 रेल का स्टेशन 4 ईंट का  
पक्का मकान 5 ज़मींदार 6 मिट्टी के कच्चे घर 7 कोपड़े  
8 मुसलमान 9 अछूत जाति के लोग 10 मन्दिर 11 टूटा-फूटा  
12 पत्थर की मूर्ति ।

## EXERCISE 27.

The *disease*<sup>1</sup> spread in all directions.<sup>2</sup> There was not a village for miles round,<sup>3</sup> where some people had not died and *scarcely*<sup>4</sup> a house where some were not lying ill. In Bijpur thirty or forty had died and all the people *were terribly frightened*.<sup>5</sup> Many had shut up their houses and fled *to relatives*<sup>6</sup> in distant villages. A *retired doctor*<sup>7</sup> had his house in Bijpur but *as soon as*<sup>8</sup> the illness became bad he had gone off to Calcutta *with his wife and children*<sup>9</sup>

1 बीमारी 2 चारों ओर 3 आसपास 4 शायद ही  
5 बहुत डरे हुए थे 6 रिश्तेदारों के पास or संबंधियों के पास  
7 पेंशनवाफता डाक्टर 8 ज्योंही (will be followed by त्योंही  
9 बाल बच्चों के साथ ।

## EXERCISE 28

The voice *belonged to a cripple*<sup>1</sup> both of whose legs were *useless*.<sup>2</sup> The blind man went to words it and the cripple said, "Brother, I am a cripple and can not walk, and you are blind and cannot see where you are going. Come let us help *each other*."<sup>3</sup> Do you lift me up and *set*<sup>4</sup> me on your *shoulders*.<sup>5</sup> Then as you go along, I shall be *able to direct*<sup>6</sup> you on your way. *In this manner*,<sup>7</sup> both of our *lives*<sup>8</sup> will be saved." The blind man *agreed*<sup>9</sup>

to this. He seated the cripple on his shouldiers,  
and in the way they got safely<sup>10</sup> out of the village

( S. C. 1928 )

1 लंगड़े की धी 2 बेकाम के 3 एक दूसरे की 4 बैठ लो  
5 कंधों पर 6 बता सकूंगा 7 इस प्रकार 8 हम दोनों के प्राण  
9 बात मान गया 10 सुरक्षित ।

### EXERCISES 29

A hungry little hen was scratching<sup>1</sup> among  
the rubbish<sup>2</sup> by the road side. when suddenly  
found a glittering diamond.<sup>3</sup> She said, 'Of what use<sup>4</sup>  
is this stone to me? A grain<sup>5</sup> of rice or barley<sup>6</sup> is  
what I am in need of, and that I cannot find  
anywhere, and I am even now<sup>7</sup> dying of hunger.  
Diamond may please pretty, womemee, but for  
us birds nothing is better is than corn.

( J. C. 1937 )

1 खूब रही थी 2 कूड़े की 3 चमकदार हीरा 4 किस काम  
का 5 दाना 6 जौ 7 अब भी ।

### EXERCISE 30

A boy was shouting<sup>1</sup> in a street of Delhi.<sup>2</sup>  
"Orange." A man said to him. Here in Delhi we  
should say 'Oranges'. The boy showed his basket  
in which was one only one orange, and said,

"How can I say 'Oranges,' when *I have but one left?*"<sup>3</sup> (J.C. 1937)

1 बिल्ला रहा था 2 देहली ( दिल्ली ) 3 मेरे पास केवल एक ही बचा है ।

## EXERCISE 31.

After this, *evanandan*<sup>1</sup> stayed there seven days. He *had* two rooms and a verandah of that house *repaired*<sup>2</sup>, he brought *provisions*<sup>3</sup> for a whole year, he bought six *dresses*<sup>4</sup> and gave them to *Devbala*.<sup>5</sup> *In the meantime*,<sup>6</sup> the boy also got quite well again. Therefor on the eighth day he said. "I am going now, but will return *as soon as possible*."<sup>7</sup>

He *set out*<sup>8</sup> at four o'clock, *entered*<sup>9</sup> the carriage at half-past four, *conversed*<sup>10</sup> with his friends till a quarter-past six, and arrived at a quarter to seven. His brother *was expecting*<sup>11</sup> him.

(J. C. 1930)

1 देवनन्दन 2 मरम्मत करवाई थी 3 रसद 4 कपड़े  
5 देबाला 6 इसीबीच में 7 जितनी जल्दी हो सकेगा 8 चला  
9 बैठा था 10 बात चीत करता रहा 11 रास्ता देख रहा था ।

## EXERCISE 32.

The *great queen*<sup>1</sup> got down from the boat. On the bank she had to cross a wet and *muddy*<sup>2</sup> place. As she did not wish to *soil*<sup>3</sup> her shoes, she stood still.<sup>4</sup> A *youngman*<sup>5</sup> was standing near, who took off his *fine clock*<sup>6</sup> and laid it on the muddy place, so that the queen walked over *dryshod*.<sup>7</sup> The queen *rewarded*<sup>8</sup> the young man, by giving him *employment*<sup>9</sup> and a place in her *court*.<sup>10</sup>

(J. C. 1932)

1 महारानी 2 कीचड़ वाले 3 मैले करना 4 चुपचाप  
5 नब युवक (नौजवान) 6 अंगरखा 7 बिना पैर भिगोये (सूखे पैर)  
8 इनाम दिया 9 नौकरी 10 दरबार ।

## EXERCISE 33

Through *gambling*<sup>1</sup> Nal had to go into *exile*.<sup>2</sup> and poor *Damayanti*<sup>3</sup> had to wander in the jungle with him. It was on account of gambling that *Yudhisthir*<sup>4</sup> was *expelled*<sup>5</sup> from his kingdom and *Draupadi*<sup>6</sup> was *taunted*<sup>7</sup> and *treated*<sup>8</sup> as a slave-girl.

(J. C. 1932)

1 जुए के कारण 2 बनमें 3 बेचारी दमयन्ती को 4 युधिष्ठिर  
5 निकाला गया (झोड़ना पड़ा) 6 द्रौपदी 7 अस्मान हुआ  
8 व्यवहार किया गया ।

## EXERCISE 34

*My dear fellow, I don't waste<sup>2</sup> your time and your money in travelling twenty miles to try and see him. He was only to stay with his brother for two or three days and must have gone home after this. All that you wish to say to him you can equally well say<sup>3</sup> in a letter; and there is this advantage<sup>4</sup> in a letter, that what he says in reply,<sup>5</sup> you will have in writing and he cannot so well back out<sup>6</sup> of anything that he promises.*

(S. C. 1936)

1 मेरे प्यारे मित्र 2 नष्ट करो 3 अच्छी तरह लिख सकते हो 4 लाभ (फायदा) 5 जवाब (उत्तर) 6 पीछे हट सकता ।

## EXERCISE 35

(a) Once there was a man who had *many sheep*.<sup>1</sup> Every day a little boy took them to a hill to feed.<sup>2</sup> They liked to the grass that grew there.<sup>3</sup> They stayed all day on the hill, and the boy looked after<sup>4</sup> them. Down the hill there was a garden. Some men worked there.

(b) There was a washerman at Benares who had an ass and a dog in his court<sup>5</sup> loose<sup>6</sup> Once upon a time, when he was sleeping in his room, a thief came into his house, and began to carry off his

goods. The ass saw what the thief was doing and wanted to wake up his master.

(Matric 1937)

(a) 1 बहुत सी भेड़ें 2 चराने को 3 बड़ी हुई 4 देख  
रेख कर रहा था ।

(b) 5 हाते में 6 खुला हुआ था ।

### EXERCISE 36

He had two sons who were so *different*<sup>1</sup> from one another in *character*<sup>2</sup> that one would never have *supposed*<sup>3</sup> they were brothers and had grown up in the same hom. One was very *industrious*<sup>4</sup>; in fact he was newer happy unless he was working. The other was *extremely lazy*<sup>5</sup> and used to run away at the *mere mention*<sup>6</sup> of work. One brother was *absolutely truthful*<sup>7</sup>, the other seemed as though he could not tell truth even if he tried. Both the father and the mother were hard working and *honest*<sup>8</sup> people, so that it was *difficult to understand*<sup>9</sup> how a child of theirs could be so lazy and untruthful.

(J. O. 1938)

1 जुदा or पृथक् 2 स्वभाव or चाल चलन 3 जान सकता  
था 4 मेहनती or परिश्रमी 5 एक दम आलसी 6 नाम लेते ही  
7 बिल्कुल सच्चा 8 ईमानदार 9 यह जानना कठिन था ।

## EXERCISE 37.

Some *wicked men*<sup>1</sup> came *together*<sup>2</sup> to kill the king when the queen heard that they were trying to enter the room, she *gave orders*<sup>3</sup> that the door *should be barred*<sup>4</sup>. One of her maids ran to put the *bar*<sup>5</sup> in its place, but she found that it *had been removed*. Knowing that if she *could delay*<sup>6</sup> the *murderers*,<sup>7</sup> the king could be hidden away this brave maiden *thrust her arm*<sup>8</sup> in place of the bar. *Not till*<sup>9</sup> her arm was broken were they able to open the door, and by this time the king was hidden.

(J. C. 1934)

1 बद्माश 2 एक साथ 3 आज्ञा दी 4 भीतर से बन्द कर दिया जाय 5 डंडा or किल्ली 6 रोक रखे 7 हत्यारों को 8 अपनी बांह डाल दी 9 जबतक (will be followed by तब तक) ।

## EXERCISE 38.

In the *midst of a millet-field*<sup>1</sup> there was a *platform*,<sup>2</sup> consisting of a *bedstead supported on*<sup>3</sup> four *bamboos* one at each corner. Seated on this, women and children used to *scare away*<sup>4</sup> the birds, by *shouting* and *clapping bits of wood*<sup>5</sup> together. One day a woman had left her baby sleeping in a basket on the platform while she went below to fetch some water.



The baby woke up and began to cry, at once the mother returned and climbed up on the platform, there was no ladder,<sup>6</sup> but placing her bare feet<sup>7</sup> on the knot<sup>8</sup> in the bamboo, she was up in a moment<sup>9</sup>.

1 बच्चा के खेत के बीच में 2 मचान 3 खड़ा था 4 उड़ाया करते थे 5 लकड़ी बजा बजा कर 6 सीढ़ी 7 नंगे पैर 8 गांठों पर 9 कौरन ( उसी समय )

### EXERCISE 39

While Panna was thinking thus all of a sudden<sup>1</sup> she heard the sound of footsteps<sup>2</sup>. Under standing that it must be Banbir himself<sup>3</sup> who was coming. Panna hardened her heart,<sup>4</sup> and taking up Udai Singh, she hid him away in a corner, and laid her own little boy in his place thereupon<sup>5</sup> came Banbir with a naked sword,<sup>6</sup> in his hand, and asked Panna, "where is Udai Singh? Tell me." Choking with fear<sup>7</sup> she could not speak. All that she could do was to lift her finger and point<sup>8</sup> to her babe. Immediately Banbir killed him with one stroke of his sword.

(J. C. 1986)

1 अचानक 2 पैरों की आवाज़ 3 स्वयं ( खुद ) 4 जी कड़ा करके 5 तब 6 नंगी तलवार 7 डरके मारे 8 अंगुली से इशारा किया ।

## EXERCISE 40.

At last it was decided that the king should send *one of his generals*<sup>1</sup> to the enemy's camp<sup>2</sup> to discuss terms of peace.<sup>3</sup> The man chosen for this purpose had already had *considerable experience*<sup>4</sup> in negotiations of this sort.<sup>5</sup> If that had not been the case the king would never have agreed to trust him with so responsible a task.<sup>6</sup> Even as it was<sup>7</sup> he was given strict instructions<sup>8</sup> not to agree to the surrender<sup>9</sup> of any of his country's territory.<sup>10</sup> If such thing was suggested, he was to refuse even to discuss it. This was made quite clear<sup>11</sup> to him in the interview<sup>12</sup> he had with the king immediately before setting out on his difficult mission.

(J. C. 1938)

1 एक सेनापति को 2 डेरे में 3 संधि की शर्तें तय करने के लिए 4 काफी अनुभव था 5 इस तरह की बातचीत का 6 ऐसी जिम्मेदारी का काम 7 फिर भी 8 सख्त हिदायत 9 देने के लिये 10 भाग or हिस्से के 11 साफ साफ कह दिया गया था 12 मुलाकात ।



## EXERCISE 41.

The time went quickly while they were talking about these things and after an hour or two they came to the place. There was only a *small number*<sup>1</sup> of houses, but the land was *fertile*<sup>2</sup>. The men living there *chiefly*<sup>3</sup> *keepers of sheep*<sup>4</sup>, and in *the eyes of*<sup>5</sup> the farmers they were not *badly off*<sup>6</sup>. The older man was *the headman*<sup>7</sup> of the place. In front of his house were *ten to twelve*<sup>8</sup> cows and buffaloes having a meal of dry grass. On a *hook*<sup>9</sup> was hanging a *drum*<sup>10</sup> and on a *shelf*<sup>11</sup> were some books *rolled up in a cloth*<sup>12</sup> to keep them from the dust. No doubt they were his *books of religion*<sup>13</sup>.

(J. C. 1939)

1 कुछ 2 उपजाऊ 3 अधिकांश 4 गढ़रिये 5 दृष्टि में  
 or समझ में 6 गरीब 7 चौधरी 8 दस, बारह 9 खूँटी  
 पर 10 ढोल 11 आलमारी में 12 बंधी हुई, or बस्ते में  
 13 धार्मिक ।

## **PART IV.**

### **COMPOSITION.**

*" Reading maketh a full man, conference a ready,  
and writing an exact man."*

*--Bacon*

### **LETTER-WRITING**

### **AND**

### **ESSAY-WRITING.**





## LETTER-WRITING

### Sample Letters

To One's Father ( पिता जी को )

हार्ट काटेज.

कालिम्पीङ्ग

८ अप्रैल, सन् १९३६,

श्रीमान् पिता जी !

सादर प्रणाम ! हम सब यहाँ कुशल से हैं और आशा है आप भी प्रसन्न होंगे ।

जिनको कल बुखार आ गया था, वह अस्पताल में है । आज वह बिल्कुल अच्छा है । आप चिन्ता न करें । जोन अच्छी है और मन लगाकर पढ़ रही है ।

डेढ़ महीने बाद हम लोगों की छुट्टी होगी । छुट्टी केवल दो हफ्ते की है. इसलिए हम घर जाने न पावेंगे । क्या आप छुट्टी में यहाँ आयेंगे ? माता जी को भी साथ लाइयेगा ? हमें आप लोगों से मिलकर बड़ी खुशी होगी ।

आपका प्रिय ( प्यारा ) पुत्र.

एडवर्ड,

## 2 To A Friend.

२. मित्र को

१५ कैनिंग स्ट्रीट,  
आगरा ।

१५-२-३६

प्रिय पैट्रिक !

तुम्हारी चिट्ठी मिली । धन्यवाद ।

मुझे ख़ुशी है मेरा स्कूल भी २५ नवम्बर को बन्द हो रहा है । मैं २० तारीख तक तुम्हारे पास पहुँच सकूँगा । वह कैसा अच्छा दिन होगा जब हम फिर एक बार मिलेंगे और साथ साथ बम्बई की सैर करेंगे ।

मेरी परीक्षा हो गई है । आशा है मैं पास हो जाऊँगा । अपनी माता जी को मेरा प्रणाम कहना और लिली को प्यार ।

तुम्हारा प्यारा मित्र,  
डेविड.

## 3. To A Book-seller.

३. पुस्तक-बेचने वाले को

सेंट ए० सी० होम्स

सेवा में,

कोलिम्पोङ्ग

मैनेज़र,

२ दिसम्बर १९३८

सारदा मंदिर लिमिटेड देहली ।

प्रिय भ्राता !

आपका भेजा हुआ पासेल मिला । धन्यवाद ।

मैंने आपका पासेल लेलिया है । मुझे दुःख से लिखना पड़ता है कि उसमें दो किताबें भीतर से फटी हुई हैं मैं उन्हें एक अलग पैकेट में वापिस

भेज रहा हूँ। आशा है आप उनके बदले दूसरी किताबें भेजने की कृपा करेंगे।

आप का—

फ्रेड जॉन्सन।

### Letters

How to begin and end letters.

Beginning

End

To

Superior श्रीमान् पृथ्वी पिता जी

आपका प्यारा पुत्र

My dear father

Your loving son

श्रीमान् मान्यवर भाई साहब आपका आज्ञाकारी भाई

My dear brother

Your loving brother

To

Epuals मेरे प्यारे विलियम

तुम्हारा

My dear William

Yours Sincerely

प्यारे मित्र

तुम्हारा मित्र

My dear friend

Your Sincer ely

In a

Business प्रिय महाशय

आपका

letter

Dear Sir,

Yours faithfully





## ESSAY WRITING.

### घोड़ा A Horse

घोड़ा बड़ा खूबसूरत जानवर है। यह सब को अच्छा लगता है। इसकी गर्दन पर लम्बे लम्बे बाल होते हैं। घोड़े की दुम के बाल लम्बे होते हैं। उससे वह मक्खियाँ उड़ाता है घोड़े की टाँगें बड़ी मजबूत होती हैं।

घोड़ा आदमी के बहुत काम आता है। कोई घोड़ा सवारी के काम में आता है, कोई गाड़ी में जोता जाता है। कहीं कहीं घोड़े से हल भी जोतते हैं।

घोड़े कई रंग के होते हैं। कोई लाल, कोई काला, कोई सफेद और कोई चितकबरा होता है।

कुछ घोड़े ऊँचे कद के होते हैं और कुछ छोटे कद के। छोटे घोड़ों को टट्टू कहते हैं। ये पहाड़ों पर ज्यादा काम देते हैं, टट्टूओं पर लोग बोझ भी लादते हैं।

घोड़े का मुँह लम्बा आँखें बड़ी बड़ी और कान छोटे होते हैं। इसके पैरों को टाप कहते हैं। घोड़े की टापों में लोहे की नाल जड़ दी जाती है।

घोड़ा दाना, घास और भूसा खाता है। यह बड़ा ईमानदार जानवर है। अपने मालिक को खूब पहचानना है और उस के लिये अपनी जान तक दे देता है।

## GURU NANAK

The founder of the Sikh Religion)

गुरु नानक जी ने सिक्ख धर्म को चलाया है। यह लाहौर के पास एक गांव में पैदा हुए थे। इन के बाप जाति के खत्री थे और सीदागरी करते थे।

नानक जी बचपन से ही बड़े समझदार थे। यह हर काम को सूझ सोच समझकर करते थे। जब बड़े हुए तो इनका जी किसी काम में न लगता था। इनको जो कुछ मिलता था सब गरीबों को बाँट देते थे।

जब यह बत्तीस साल के हुए तो इन्होंने घर छोड़ दिया और फकीर हो गये। तब से देशभर में घूम-घूम कर लोगों को उपदेश देने लगे। जो लोग इनको बातों को सुनते थे, इनके चेले हो जाते थे।

यह कहते थे सबका ईश्वर एक ही है। हमको उसी ईश्वर की पूजा करनी चाहिए। वह हमारे सब कामों को देखता है। जो जैसा काम करेगा वैसा ही फल पावेगा।

## A HOUSE ON FIRE

### मकान में आग लगना

मैं बाजार जा रहा था। थोड़ी देर बाद मैंने देखा कि आसमान लाल हो रहा है। आग की लपटें उठ रही हैं। बाजार में बहुत से लोग एक तरह भागे जा रहे थे। मैं भी उधर ही भागा।

थोड़ी दूर पर एक मकान में आग लगी हुई थी। मकान बड़ा था। उसकी तीन मंजिलें थीं। उसके दरवाजे, उसकी छत टूट-टूट कर नीचे गिर रही थीं। आग बुझानेवाला इंजिन भी आ गया था बहुत से आदमी आग बुझा रहे थे। लेकिन वह तो तेज होती जा रही थी।

तीन आदमी ऊपर की छतपर खड़े थे। एक बच्चा भी था। वे चिल्ला रहे थे—“बचाओ, बचाओ”। एक स्काउट ने बड़ी हिम्मत की। एक लम्बी सीढ़ी रखकर वह छत पर चढ़ गया और उन्हें उतार लाया। उसके कड़े भी थोड़े थोड़े जल गये। चार घण्टे तक मकान जलता रहा। फिर जाकर आग बुझी।

## LUCKNOW

### लखनऊ

लखनऊ का पुराना नाम लक्ष्मणपुर है। कहते हैं इसे राम के भाई लक्ष्मण ने बसाया था। बहुत दिनों तक वह अवध के नवाबों की राजधानी थी। आज कल यह संयुक्त प्रान्त (United Provinces) की राजधानी है।

यह एक बड़ा सुन्दर नगर है। इसके बीचों बीच गोमती नदी बहती है। थोड़ी थोड़ी दूर पर पार्क बने हुए हैं इसी से इसको बगीचों का नगर (City of gardens) कहते हैं।

मुसलमान बादशाह की बनवाई हुई बहुतसी पुरानी इमारतें यहाँ हैं इनमें इमामबाड़ा बहुत मशहूर है। नए मकानों में

कौंसिल भवन और रेलवे स्टेशन देखने लायक है। यहाँ एक अजायबघर (Museum) और एकचिड़िया घर (Zoo) भी है।

यहाँ एक विश्व विद्यालय (University) है और मेडिकल कालिज भी है। बहुत से अस्पताल भी हैं। यहाँ तीन मुख्य बाजार हैं। अँग्रेजों का हजरातगंज और हिन्दुस्तानियों के धोक और अभीनावाद। शाम को अभीनावाद में बड़ी भीड़ हो जाती है।

यहाँ के लोग पतंग उड़ाने को बहुत शौकीन हैं। यहाँ मिट्टी के खिलौने बड़े सुन्दर बनाते हैं और खरबूजे बहुत मीठे होते हैं।

## THE ADVANTAGES OF LEARNING HINDI.

### हिन्दी पढ़ने के लाभ

हिन्दी हिन्दुस्तान की मुख्य भाषा है। यों तो हिन्दुस्तान एक बहुत बड़ा देश है और पचासों भाषायें यहां बोली जाती हैं। पर हिन्दी एक ऐसी भाषा है जिसे बःबः के ज्यादातर लोग समझते हैं। इसलिए इस देश में रहने वाले हर एक व्यक्ति को हिन्दी जाननी चाहिए। हिन्दी पढ़कर वह सबकी बात को अच्छी तरह समझ सकता है और अपनी बात सबको समझा सकता है।

जब से हिन्दुस्तानियों के हाथ में बहुत से अधिकार आए हैं उन्होंने हिन्दी को पढ़ना जरूरी ठहरा दिया है। जब तक हिन्दी न जानें तब तक सरकारी नौकरी मिलती। बड़े बड़े अफसरों को भी यह भाषा सीखनी पड़ती है। बिना लोगों की बोली जाने के उनसे कैसे बात कर सकते हैं ?

अंग्रेजलड़के लड़कियों के लिये तो यह बहुत ही जरूरी है । कारखानों में काम मिलने पर वे अपने साथियों से कैसे बात करेंगे ? यहाँ के अधिकतर तो लोग अंग्रेजी नहीं जानते । बहुत सी लड़कियाँ अस्सताल में नर्स का काम करती हैं । उन्हें हिन्दुस्तानी बीमारों के साथ रात दिन काम पड़ता है । बड़े बड़े साहबों को भी अपने नौकरों से हिन्दी में बात करनी पड़ती है ।

इसलिए हिन्दुस्तान में रहने वाले प्रत्येक स्त्री-पुरुष के लिए हिन्दी का जानना उतना ही जरूरी है, जितना किसी हिन्दुस्तानी को बिलायत जाने पर अंग्रेजी का जानना



# **SUBJECTS FOR ESSAYS.**

1. A description of the town or village where you live. (S. C. 1935)
2. What would you like to do when you leave school ? (S. C. 1935)
3. Write about different ways of travelling, rail etc. (S. C. 1935)
4. The Viceroy of India—his responsibilities etc. (S. C. 1936)
5. Recreation—games—indoors and outdoors.
6. Kindness to animals. (S. C. 1936)
7. A faithful dog. (S. C. 1937)
8. Learning a swim. (S. C. 1937)
9. Summer. (S. C. 1937)
10. Honesty in business. (S. C. 1938)
11. A Motor Car. (S. C. 1938)





## ***PART V.***



### **TEST QUESTIONS**



**‘History repeats itself, examiners repeat one another.’**





## TEST QUESTIONS

### For School Certificate

1. Frame sentences to illustrate the use of any four of the following:—

आंख खुलना, आंखें दिखाना, आदमी बनना, आपे से बाहर होना, उंगली पर नचाना, जूँ न रेंगना ।

2. (a) Give the opposite genders of any six of the following.--

बहन, नतनी, युवा अहीर, लोहार, सिंह, हाथी, भेड़, गाय, बछिया ।

(b) Form abstract nouns from any five of the following:—

चढ़ना, सजाना, समझना, चिल्लाना, ठीठ, बूढ़ा, गुरु ।

3. Correct the following:—

(a) वह दही बहुत खट्टी है ।

(b) तुम अब जाने सकता है ।

(c) मैंने बोला था कि वहां न जा ।

(d) तुम अपना किताब उठा ले ।

(e) अच्छा आदमी को सब लोग चाहता है ।

4. Frame sentences to illustrate the use of any four of the following:—

आंख मूंदना, आंखें फेर लेना, अच्छे दिन आना, कान देना, गरम होना, जी जलना ।

5. (a) Form adjectives from the following and use them in short sentences:—रंग, हवा, चाल, हिलना, पानी ।

(b) Give the opposite genders of any four of the following:—

दात्र, सास, कुत्ता, मोर, भैंस, माली, पागल, सखी ।

6. Correct the following:—

(a) हम कहे थे, तू मत जानो ।

(b) मैंने उसको पढ़ने का वास्ते बोला ।

(c) हमारे से यह काम नहीं होने सकता ।

(d) कल खूब पानी बरसती थी ।

(e) अपना लड़का को अच्छा तरह समझाओ

7. Frame short sentences to illustrate the use and signification of repetition of adjectives.

8. (a) Give the opposite genders to any five of the following:—भाई, गाय. भैंस, सिंह, धोबी, पण्डित, सास, बधू, देव, चूहा ।

(b) Correct the following:—

यह दही अच्छी नहीं है । मैंने उसको घर जाने का वारते बोला । हम आफिस जाता है । लड़की भात खाने मंगता है । उसको नौकर घर भाग गया । लड़का लोग फुटबल खेलता है ।

9. (a) Give two examples of the objective case which cannot be used without को ।

(b) Write sentences to illustrate the use of

(i) the सप्तमी विभक्ति in the sense of निर्धारण, (ii) the षष्ठी विभक्ति in the sense of परिमाण, and (iii) the पञ्चमी विभक्ति in the sense of सम्बन्ध ।

(c) Re-write the following correctly :—

राम रावण को मारे । कृष्ण ने द्वारका गये । तुम तुम्हारा काम करो । मैं जाते जाते गिर पड़े । वह आदमी को बुलाओ । घड़ी सात बजी है । अच्छी थी नहीं मिलती है । पांच लैडका आया है । वह रोते रोते मर गयी । हबे से कागज उड़ गया ।

10. To illustrate the use of (a) the tenses of verb, (b) the cases, gender and number of nouns and pronouns, (c) the postpositions, translate the following sentences into Hindi:

- (a) They gave flowers to all who were present
- (b) Having made the boxes the women placed them on the table.
- (c) Their sons and daughters were taking the boxes and placing them near the wall
- (d) Give each of the boys two rupees and each of the girl one.
- (e) Two of them live in this house, two in that, the others sleep under the trees.
- (f) They all sleep in their own houses but go together every day to the river to bathe.
- (g) Will your honour now bathe and when your honour returns I will give your honour your food.

(h) The king taking the prime-minister with him went to the city.

(i) The prime-minister's house is some distance from the city but very near the river.

(j) Going along together the men and their wives and families came to the river and stayed there.

11. Translate the following sentences into English:

(a) वह नित खेला करता है ।

(b) स्त्रियाँ जाने लगीं ।

(c) जब बोलने लगा, तब भाग निकले ।

(d) रेल गाड़ी आना चाहती है ।

(e) लड़क़ी कब आने वाली है ।

(f) कभी कभी वह करने को तैयार होता है, कभी कभी वह हट जाता है ।

12. Correct the mistakes in the following passage:

तीन लड़की ने अपनी घर को देखीं और भीतर जा बैठे जब उनके दोनों भाई सुने कि अपने तीम बहिन आईं तो उन्होंने

ने कहने लगा कि जब तक हम लौटें तुम यहाँ रहो हम राजों के पास जाकर उनको कहेंगे कि हमारा साथ आना देखो।

13 To illustrate the various parts of the verb give the Hindi for :—

(a) They saw the three women coming towards them.

(b) The three men were quarrelling among themselves as they came along.

(c) They must have come yesterday or the day before.

(d) Come with me, Sir. I will show you how they build houses in our village.

(e) I neither came nor will come, by coming what can I do? Before Ramdas and his brother came to you, all who you came had gone away without doing any good.

(f) The boys who went obtained a book, had they not gone they would not have obtained anything.

14. Give an exact translation of the following sentences :—

(a) वे चलते चलते थके हुए पहुँचे।

(b) क्या ! तुम उसे मार डालना चाहते हो।

(c) वह लड़का मरना चाहता है ।

(d) तुम्हें भागना चाहिए नहीं तो पकड़े जाओगे ।

15. Give the Hindi for the words in italics only.

(a) They and these girls and you and I will do it.

(b) Two of them live in their own (houses).

(c) O King, graciously listen to my story.

16 Write four sentences in Hindi to illustrate the various uses of the Infinitive,

17. Give in words and figures the Hindi for the following:—

79, 96, 175,  $2\frac{1}{2}$  seers, Rs1. 8. 0.,  $7\frac{1}{4}$  annas.

18. Write five sentences in Hindi to illustrate the use of the following postpositions:—

समेत, बिना, समान, सांती, और, योग्य ।

And six more to illustrate the following adverbs :—

योंही, पीछे, कबका, साक्षात्, काहे को, निःसन्देह ।



19. Translate the following sentences into idiomatic Hindi :—

- (a) I do not need any .
- (b) He owns three houses in the city.
- (c) They were very tired after travelling such a distance.
- (d) If it be necessary ask for it.
- (e) You may do what you may but you will not obtain the book.
- (f) Yes, he talks but he's not the man to do anything.

20. Give general rules for the determination of the gender of nouns in Hindi.

21. To illustrate the use of the various tenses etc. of the verb give the Hindi for the following sentences :—

- (a) Should he go, I will tell you.
- (b) Before he went' he said to me.
- (c) He must have gone by now .

- (d) Had he not gone, we might have obtained his advice
- (e) He told me he was going out of the house.
- (f) They are on the point of going into the town

22. Give the nearest equivalents possible to the following sentences using the Passive instead of the active form of the verb:—

- (a) बतलाते हैं कि पंजाब उनकी जन्म भूमि है ।
- (b) चारों ओर इन दो बातों को सुनायेंगे ।
- (c) राजा के पास पुस्तक को भेंट दिया ।
- (d) कथा दो दो पैसे पर यह बेच डालेंगे ।
- (e) यदि उमने ऐसा न बतलाया होता ।

23. To illustrate the use of adverbs translate the following into Hindi:—

- (a) What he said yesterday, he says to day. will say tomorrow and always.
- (b) He does his work quickly and exceedingly well.
- (c) He greatly exaggerates the number of the sick and dying

- (b) He stood firmly, fought bravely and died like a hero.

24. Translate the following sentences into idiomatic Hindi using as few words as possible:—

- (a) However many they may be let no one escape.
- (b) Had they been present they would have been able to understand.
- (c) They must have come at night while we were all asleep, stolen our goods and fled in the dark.
- (d) God is everywhere, sees everything, hears everything and knows everything, nothing is concealed from him.

25. Give a free idiomatic translation, in English of the following sentences:—

- [a] जो हो मैं अवश्य जा कर और हे मारपीट कर के उसको लाऊँगा ।
- [b] एक साठ और एक तीन बीस ।
- [c] बीड़ा उठाकर वह जाने को प्रस्तुत हुआ ।
- [d] मन ही मन जलता आ वह क्रोध बिपाकर चुप रहा

26. To illustrate the use of Verbs and Adverbs translate into Hindi the following sentences.
- (a) Had he not spoken so angrily the quarrel would not have taken place.
  - (b) Advancing very slowly and very quietly, in the darkness they escaped unnoticed.
  - (c) Don't stand there so silent, speak up and let us know what you really think.
  - (d) You go ahead. the rest will follow; one at a time, as opportunities arise.
  - (e) If they had come yesterday there would have been no difficulty, we could have gone all together to-day
27. To illustrate the use of causative verbs translate the following sentences into Hindi:—
- (a) I have hidden the book, you must get the other things hidden.
  - (b) I will send the Pundit. You must tell Ramdas to have the two disciples sent along. and that as soon as possible.
  - (c) Either you must make it yourself, get your brother to make it, or have it made<sup>o</sup> by somebody else. Made it must be in three days or less,

28. Give an English translation of the following words and phrases and sentences :—

[a] एकाएक ।

[b] दो दो तीन तीन करके बांट दिया ।

[c] पुनर्विवाह ।

[d] पहाड़ी उतार-चढ़ाव ।

[e] भौंति भौंति की चिड़िया ।

[f] भाइयों में परस्पर बड़ा ही स्नेह था ।

[g] सम्मान अपमान ।

29. Write 12 Hindi words in which the Prefixes :

अ, निर् [or निस्.], बे, सु, दुः, महा and Suffixes वन, क, वाला, ई, ता, वान are found.

30. Translate the following sentences into Hindi:—

(a) They (fem.) had gone into the city.

(b) Had he known he would not have sent the letter.

(c) Should he come he will take his meals with the rest

(d) She gave her brothers the books and let them go.

(e) He told them again and again not to say a word to anyone.

(f) I do not know whether it is better to, speak or to remain silent.

(g) They are coming and going the whole day

31. Give the very close translation of the following sentences into English :

(a) आगे बढ़कर वह रानी के सामने खड़ा होकर नगर के बासियों की दुर्दशा का वर्णन करते करते रोने लगा

(b) यदि कल वे आये होते तो अच्छा होता पर अब वे चाहे आवें या न आवें काम तो नहीं बनेगा ।

32. Give idiomatic sentences in Hindi for the following :--

(a) He's no good at all.

(b) You may do what you like but he won't speak a single word.

(c) Happiness and trouble, wealth and poverty health and sickness life and death.

33. Give the Hindi for .--

- (a) I will come tomorrow.
- (b) I may come tomorrow,
- (c) Shall I come tomorrow.
- (d) He gave him two books yesterday.
- (e) They had left before he arrived.

34. (a) Give the rules for the use of चुका ।

(b) Illustrate the chief meanings of मितना ।

(c) what is the meaning of बंधा, बाँधा, बंधाया, बंधवाया ।

35. नारायण ने कहा—हाँ अभी कोई २० मिनट हुए, बह इधर गया है ।

(a) Mark the word कोई in the above sentence.

When does काइ inflect and when is it indeclinable. When it is indeclinable, what does it mean ?

(b), What is the gender of शंका and पेड़ ? What is the general rule deciding the gender of Hindi nouns ending in a ?

36. Translate into Hindi.

- (i) Whatever you do, don't touch that.
- (ii) He was very angry at what I said to him
- (iii) The men in the boat were nearly drowned.

**TEST QUESTIONS**  
**FOR JUNIOR CAMBRIDGE**

1. (a) Give in figures and writing the Hindi of  
26, 47, 83.  
(b) How would you write in idiomatic Hindi  
(do not use figures) the following:—  
175 men, 250 women. Rs. 1-4-0.
2. To illustrate the use of the Infinitive Mood  
Give the Hindi of.—
  - (a) First work then play.
  - (b) It is better to work than to play.
  - (c) It is necessary to work.
  - (d) It is good to work.
  - (e) He began to work.
  - (f) The boy wants to play.
3. To illustrate the use of the various tenses give  
the Hindi of:--



- (a) I will not go there.
- (b) They (fem.) saw the house.
- (c) They (fem.) have seen the house.
- (d) Had you (mas.) seen the house before you came here yesterday ?
- (e) Having seen the house the (fem.) have both gone there.
- (f) On seeing the house she began to cry.
4. Do not translate the following sentences, but give Hindi of the words printed in bold:—
- (a) **On** the table.
- (b) It hangs **ov. r** the b. d.
- (c) He lives **over** the river.
- (d) Some went **before**, others followed behind
- (e) He stood **before** the king.
- (f) Come to me **before** you go.
- (g) The king spoke **first**, after him the prime-minister.
- (h) **All** the three came.
- (i) It was surrounded by water on all sides.
- (j) He sat **by** the king.

- 5 In the following sentences. translate only the words or group of words which are bold. using Participles or conjunctive participles :—

He rose and went away. She counted and found there were five, Just as he arrived at the station, the train was leaving. Keeping on running. he got home. Take ten rupees out of the bag which is open. He opened the bag and took out ten rupees.

6. Translate the following into Hindi. giving special attention to the verbs and their objects:—

Cows eat green grass. The cows ate the grass, The girls have eaten sixteen mangoes, The boy had eaten two fishes, She saw the man, He saw these women

7. Give the feminine of देवर, तेजी, ठाकुर, मोर, भैया and the plural of कन्या, रीति, नदी, लोटा, राजा ।
- 8 Give in figures and writing the Hindi of 49, 65, 74, 36, 57.
- 9 To illustrate the formation of compound verb give the Hindi of the following:—
- He wished to go home.

He asked leave to go, but he did not get it,  
 He goes to Delhi every day.  
 He is now on the point of going.  
 You, too can go.

- 10 To illustrate the construction of past participle tenses of transitive verbs ( ने का प्रयोग ) translate the following into Hindi:—

She had opened her eyes. We saw her eyes.  
 They have driven away the cows. I bought seven pearls. we caught many fishes. He sent two carts. They ploughed their field,

11. To illustrate the use of participles ( क्रियाद्योतक कर्मवाचक संज्ञा ) and conjunctive participles ( पूर्वकालिक क्रिया ) translate into Hindi the words in bold only.

Go and open the door. They went out and played. They cooked and ate the rice. Get up and run. A dead tiger is lying on the ground, wash it in flowing water, The drowning man seized the floating bamboo with his unboun hand.

12. Give in figures and in words, the Hindi for:—  
 25, 42, 58, 237, 485.

13. To illustrate the formation of compound verb  
(सयुक्त क्रिया) translate the following into  
Hindi:—

He wishes to learn English, He has finished  
reading the book. They used to bathe every  
morning. The cat is able to catch the rat.

14. To illustrate the genders and numbers of  
nouns translate into Hindi the words in **BOLD**  
only.

(Numbers to be written both in figures and  
words).

**CATS** are said to have **NINE LIVES**. **THIR-**  
**TY-FOUR SHE-CAMELS** in a line. **GARLE-**  
**NIS** were distributed to 275 guests. The queen  
had twenty seven **COMPANIONS**.

15. Translate the words underlined in the following  
and state which are honorific, relative and  
possessive pronouns.

O Pandit ! I tell **YOU** that Mohen burnt **HIS**  
fingers, and Sohan poured oil on his (**Mohan's**)  
hand.

O King ! **YOU** will see **YOUR** son getting off  
**HIS** horse and ordering **HIS** food to be given  
**HIM**.

16. To illustrate conjunctive participles (पूर्वकात्मिक क्रिया) and the use of ने with past participle forms, translate the following:—

He ran and threw away both stones.

She sat down and counted nine roots.

They went out and killed three tigresses.

They loosed and fed their mares with grass.

The good man, when he found poor widows fed them.

The doctor has come and cured her eyes.

They found and tied three ropes to the cart.

17. To illustrate compound verbs (संयुक्त क्रिया) translate:—

He wants to sleep, they have finished eating.

I cannot eat it.

18. Translate the words in bold only.

(He stood) over the well—upon the ladder—between the gates—inside the house—beyond the river—on this side of the road—below the roof. (he went) towards the garden—by way of the village—with his father.

19. Using conjunctive participles (पूर्वकालिक क्रिया) translate the words in capitals.—

WHEN YOU GO, say to him. COME AND speak to me. HE WENT and threw away the stone. He DREW his sword AND fought

- 20 With what kind of verbs and with what class of tenses of such verbs is ने to be joined to the noun of the agent ? Illustrate by translating the following:—

The girl sewed the sheet. The man has dug the ground. He had seen the beauty of the picture. He sent the girl to the house. She saw three boys.

21. Give the nominative and genitive plurals of राजा, माता, बात, स्त्री, भोला लड़का, छोटी लड़की ।

22. Translate the bold words giving the correct pronouns:

Sit down and take off your shoes, and then take off your brother's shoes. Now put away his shoes and yours.

The robber tried to hit his head with a stone, but hit his own instead.

23, Illustrate the use of the Past tenses of verbs by translating into Hindi:--

She ate bread. The man ate fish The horses have eaten grass. He had eaten four mangoes. He went to his house, She spoke They lifted the stones. These stones have been lifted. He washed his face. She washed her face. They lifted the wood on to the cart. The wood was lifted on to my cart,

23, write the following numbers both in words and figures: 149, 325, 273, 199, 646.

25. Using the correct form of Compound Verbs, translate into Hindi the words in capital only:--

When I HAVE FINISHED LEARNING my lessons I shall be ABLE TO GO AND EAT my dinner, I do not WISH-TO-CALL for you. I ASKED you a question, I did not ASK for a stick, I AM IN THE HABIT OF GOING out daily. She is just ABOUT TO SING, although she does not WISH TO SING.

25. Using the correct tenses of the verbs and were NECESSARY, the Conjunctive Participle and

the Reflexive Pronoun, translate into Hindi the following sentences :

The girl, putting on her hat, went out, and put a hat on her sister's head.

The boy fell down when running after his ball  
The mare was running swiftly, but the lazy horse was walking slowly.

If the policeman had not fallen down, he would have caught the thief.

I have finished reading all my books. so I want to read yours.

27. Name the genders of the following:—

धोबिन, निन्दा, जूता, हरिणी. पापी, दया, आँख, रात, घास  
सभा ।

28. Using the correct forms of Compound Verbs translate into Hindi the words in capital only:

This man CANNOT WALK.

This girl WISHES TO GO out,

I Began TO EAT the bread.

He ASKED leave to go, but did not GET IT

The boy HAS GONE TO SLEEP, LET him GO home.

You MUST READ this book, or you will REMAIN ignorant.



29. Translate the following, using the Reflexive Pronoun where Hindi idiom requires it:

A. (i) He wished that he might become clever like his brother.

(ii) She could not lift the bundle on to her head, so she let it lie where it was.

(iii) He found his seven cows near the river.

(iv) She drove her two donkeys to the village.

(v) The tailor was not able to sew the cloth because he had lost his needle.

B. Which of the verbs in the above sentences require the use of **ने** with the tenses formed from the Past Participle ?

30. Translate the following sentences, using the Past Conjunctive Participle (**पूर्वकालिक क्रिया**) where Hindi idiom requires it:

(i) She sat down and read her book.

(ii) He ran and caught the ball with his hand.

(iii) He lifted the axe and cut the wood.

(iv) Go, and call the blacksmith.

(v) Take my purse and pay for the goods.

31. Translate the following, using both words and figures:

632, 63, 768, 46.

32. Giving attention to the genders and numbers of nouns, translate the words in bold only.

- (a) The **mother** of the boys are present.
- (b) I have five **fingers** on each hand.
- (c) He says true words.
- (d) We have **horses** and **mares**, **dogs** and (**sheep**)
- (e) My **books** are in your hands.

23. Translate, using ने where necessary, also the Reflexive Pronoun:

- (a) The king has gone out of his palace.
- (b) The queen gave flowers to her daughter.
- (c) The boy had walked a long way.
- (d) If the girl had eaten her dinner, she would not have become so tired.
- (e) The bird flew on to the tree.
- (f) The dog bit my hand.
- (g) He wanted to ask for bread.
- (h) The rope was cut, who had cut it ?

**34. Translate into Hindi:**

- (a) If he wished to go, why did he not ask to go ?
- (b) Having looked at her<sup>t</sup> book, she shut it, and then said her lesson.
- (c) If he had spelt the words correctly, we should not have mistaken his meaning.
- (d) The boys have torn their clothes.
- (e) They will have finished dinner by now, so we shall be able to wash the plates.

**35. Translate into Hindi :**

Green grass, black pearls, dirty fingernails,  
long ropes, fat cows.



## ***Part VI.***



## **VOCABULARY**

**481 words classified into 30 groups.**



### 1. Fruits फल

आम m	mango	सेब m	apple
केला m	plantain	अनन्नास m	pin-apple
अमरुद m	guava	शरीफा m	custard-apple
नासपानो f	pea	पपीता m	papaya
नारंगी f	orange	बेर m	plum
लीची f	lichi	अनार m	pomegranate
अंशूर m	grapes	नीबू m	lemon
जीर f	fig	कटहल m	jackfruit
		खरबूता m	muskmelon

### 2 Vegetables तरकारी or सब्जी f

आलू m	potato	फूलगोभी f	cauliflower
मूली f	radish	बन्द गोभी f	cabbage
गाजर f	carrot	बेंगन m	brinjal
लेम m	bean	खीरा m	cucumber
टमाटर m	tomato	कौइया m	pumpkin
शलजम m	turnip		

### 3. Corn अनाज m

गेहूँ m	wheat	जौ m	barley
चना m	gram	सटर m	pea

धान m	paddy	चावल m	rice
मकई m	maize	ज्वार m	millet
सरसों f	mustard seed	राई f	mustard seed
तिल m	sesamum		

#### 4. Food and Drink खाने पीने की चीजें

आटा m	flour	रोटी f	bread
दाल f	dal	दूध m	milk
भात m	boiled rice	दही m	curd
घी m	clarified butter	मक्खन m	butter
मांस m	meat	गोश्त m	meat
पानी m	water	चटनी f	chutni
नमक m	salt	चीनी f	sugar
तेल m	oil	मधु m	honey
शहद m	honey	मिठाई f	sweet meat
चाय f	tea	अंडा m	egg
मछली f	fish	मिसरी f	sugar candy
बर्फ f	ice	शराब f	wine

#### 5. Dry fruits मेवे

बादाम m	almond	किशमिरा f	raisin
— m	date	भूंगफली f	groundnut
चीना बादाम m	ground-nut	बखरोट m	walnut

## 6. Spices मसाले

लाल मिर्च f	chili	काली मिर्च f	blackpepper
अदरक m	ginger	प्याज m	onion
लहसुन m	garlic	लौंग m	clove
इलायची f	cardamom	हल्दी f	turmeric or saffron
जीरा m	cumin-seed	दालचीनी f	cinnamon

## 7. Eating Utensils खाने पीने के बर्तन

प्याला m	cup	बर्तन m	dish, pot
कौंटा m	fork	छुरी f	knife
चमचा m	spoon	कटोरा m	bowl
चम्मच			
थाली f	plate	सुराही f	water-jug
मेजपोश m	table cloth		

## 8. House-hold articles घर गृहस्थी की चीजें

कुर्सी f	chair	मेज f	table
तिगई f	stool	चटाई f	mat
गलीचा f	carpet	लाक़टेन m	lantern
घड़ी f	clock	परदा m	screen°
सन्दूक m	box	तस्वीर f	picture
		चित्र m	"



बिछौना m	bedding	ख़ाट f	bed, bedstead
		पलंग m	bed
कम्बल m	blanket	चादर f	bed-sheet
मसहरी f	mosquito	तौलिया m	towel
	curtain		
साबुन m	soap	चाबी	
		कुञ्जी f	key
		ताली	
ताला m	lock	आईना m	looking-

## 9. Garments वस्त्र सम्बन्धी

कोट m	coat	कमीज f	shirt
पतलून f	pantloon	टोप m	hat
टोपी f	hat, cap	जूना m	shoe
मोजे m	stockings	फीता m	lace
बटन m	button	अंगूठी f	ring
पेटी f	belt	छाता m	umbrella
झड़ी f	stick		

## 10. study पढ़ने का कमरा m

किताब f	book	काग़ज़ m	paper
पुस्तक f	„	कलम f	pen
इन्क़ात f	ink-stand	स्याही f	ink
निब f	nib	रोशनाई f	„
पेन्सिल f	pencil	अलमारी f	cupboard

चाकू m	pen-khife	डोरा m	thread
चिट्ठी f	letter	टि्ठी का कागज़ f	letter paper
स्याही सोख m	blotting paper	बंटी f	bell
मोहर f	seal	लिफाफ़ m	envelope
टिकट m	stamps		

### 11. ANIMALS पशु or जानवर m

बिल्ली f	cat	कुत्ता m	dog
गाय f	cow	बैल m	ox
घोड़ा m	horse	बकरी f	goat
बन्दर m	monkey	गधा m	donkey
भैंस f	buffalo	सूअर m	pig
हाथी m	elephant	हिरन m	deer
ऊँट m	camel	मिह m	lion
बाघ m	tiger	चीता m	leopard
भेड़िया m	wolf	लोमड़ी f	fox

### 12 BIRDS चिड़ियाँ

चिड़ियाँ f	bird	कौआ m	crow
पक्षी m	"	कबूतर m	pigeon
मुर्गी f	hen	कलू m	owl
तोता f	parrot	कोयल f	cuckoo
झोर m	peacock	बत्तख m	duck

चील	f	kite	बाज	m	hawk
हंस	m	swan			

### 13. Insects and Reptiles कीड़े मकोड़े m

मक्खी	f	fly	बिच्छू	m	scorpion
मधुमक्खी	f	bee	खटमल	m	bug
मच्छर	m	mosquito	मकड़ी	f	spider
कीड़ा	m	worm or	ततैया	m	wasp
		insect	भिड़	f	„
साँप	m	snake	तितली	f	butterfly
मेंढक	m	frog			

### 14. Colours रङ्ग m

काला	m	black	भूरा	m	brown
पीला	m	yellow	बैंगनी	m	violet
नीला	m	blue	सफेद	m	white
हरा	m	green	चितकबरा	m	spotted
लाल	m	red	हलका	m	light
गुलाबी	m	rose	गहरा	m	deep

### 15. Relations संबंधी or नातेदार

पिता	m	father	माता	f	mother
भाई	m	brother	बहिन	f	sister
दादा, मामा			चाची, मामी		
फूफा, मौसा	m	uncle	फूफी, मौसी	f	aunt

लड़का, बेटा m	son	लड़की, बेटी f	daughter
भतीजा m	nephew	भतीजी f	niece
दादा नाना m	grand father	दादी नानी f	grand-mother
पोता, नाती m	grand son	पोती नतनी f	grand daughter
पति m	husband	पत्नी f	wife
ससुर m	father in law	सास f	mother in law

16. Parts of the Human Body शारीरिक अंग m

शरीर m	body	जीभ f	tongue
आँख f	eye	दौत m	tooth
नाक f	nose	गर्दन f	neck
मुँह m	mouth	दाढ़ी f	beard
चेहरा m	face	मूँछ f	moustache
सिर m	head	कंधा m	shoulder
भौ f	eye-brow	हाथ m	hand
बाल m	hair	हथेली f	palm
गाल m	cheek	अंगुली f	finger
नाखून m	nail	पीठ f	back
अंगूठा m	thumb and toe	पैर, पाँव m	foot
छाती f	chest	जाँघ f	thigh
कमर m	waist	तल्ला तलवा, m	sole
एड़ी f	heel	कान m	ear
		पेट m	stomach

## 17 Nature प्रकृति f

आकाश, आसमान m	sky	जलप्रपात m	water fall
चन्द्रमा, चाँद m	moon	तालाब m	pond
सूर्य, सूरज m	sun	नाला m	rivulet
तारा m	star	झील f	lake
पृथ्वी जमीन f	earth	द्वीप m	island
नदी f	river	समुद्र m	sea
पहाड़ m	hill	झरना m	spring

## 18. Men in Various Walks of life

डाक्टर m	doctor	वकील m	lawyer
बैद्य m	physician	सिपाही m	soldier
इकीम m	"		police man
दुकानदार m	shop keeper	लेखक m	writer
अफसर m	officer	कवि m	poet
गुरु m	teacher	चित्रकार m	painter
शिक्षक m	"	पादरी m	clergy man
अध्यापक m	"	ब्यापारी m	merchant

## 19. Professions पेशे m

बनिया m	grocer	बढ़ई m	carpenter
किसान m	farmer	राज-मिस्त्री m	mason
दर्जी m	tailor	कसाई m	butcher

लोहार m	blacksmith	चमार m	shoe maker
सोनार m	goldsmith	नाई, इजाम m	barber
धोबी m	washerman	तेली m	oilman
माली m	gardener	चौकीदार m	watchman
कुली m	porter	चपरासी m	peon
ग्वाला m	milkman	रसोइया m	cook
मछुआ m	fisherman	घड़ीसाज m	watch maker

## 20 Sports खेल m

गेंद m	ball	दौड़ f	run, race
फुटबाल m	foot-ball	तारा m	playing card
हॉकी m	hockey	शतरंज m	chess
क्रिकेट m	cricket	पतंग m	kite
टेनिस m	tennis	तैरना m	swimming
पोलो m	polo	शिकार m	hunt

## 21. Conveyances सवारी f

गाड़ी f	carriage	बैलगाड़ी f	bullock-cart
रेलगाड़ी f	train	पालकी f	palanquin
ट्रेमगाड़ी f	tramcar	पैरगाड़ी f	bicycle
नाव f	boat	हवागाड़ी f	motor-car
जहाज m	ship	हवाई जहाज m	aeroplane

## 22. Weapons हथियार m

बन्दूक f	gun	धनुष, कमान m	bow
तमंचा m	pistol	बाण or तीर m	arrow
गोली f	bullet	कुल्हाड़ी f	hatchet
बरछी f	spear	ढाल m	shield
भाला m	lance	लाठी f	stick
कुरा m	dagger		

## 23 Diseases रोग m

बुखार m	fever	दाद m	ringworm
जड़ैया m	malaria	हैजा m	cholera
सर्दी, जुकाम m	cold	प्लेग m	plague
खाँसी f	cough	चेचक	smallpox
घाव m	sore	तपेदिक m	tuberculosis
सिर दर्द m	headache	कोढ़ m	leprosy
खुजली f	itches	महामारी f	epidemic
आँव m	bysenetry	कै f	vomiting
दस्त m	diarrhoea		

## 24 Time समय or वक्त m

घंटा m	hour
मिनट m	minute
सेकंड m	second
दिन m	day

रात f	night
सप्ताह इफ्ता m	week
महीना, मास m	month
वर्ष, साल m	year
सबेरे प्रातः m	morning
भोर; सुबह f	"
संध्या, सँक, शाम f	evening
दोपहर f	mid-day, noon
आधी रात f	mid-night

25. Week इफ्ता (सप्ताह)

इतवार, रविवार m	sunday
सोमवार m	Monday
मंगलवार m	Tuesday
बुधवार m	Wednesday
बीरवार, गुरुवार or वृहस्पतिवार m	Thursday
शुक्रवार m	Friday
शनिवार, खनीचर m	Saturday

26. देश और शहर आदि

हिन्दुस्तान m	India
शहर m	city
कलकत्ता m	Calcutta
बम्बई m	Bombay



मद्रास m	Mabras
पटना m	Patna
बनारस m	Benares
काशी f	
इलाहाबाद m	Allahabad
लखनऊ m	Lucknow
दिल्ली, देहली f	Delhi
लाहौर m	Lahore
शिमला m	Simla
कराँची f	Karachi
पुरी f	Puri
पेशावर m	Peshawar
दार्जिलिंग m	Darjeeling
नागपुर m	Nagpur
गंगा f	The Ganges
जमुना f	The Jumna
हिमालय m	The Himalayas

## 27. Months महीने m

Hindi months	Corresponding English months
चैत (चैत्र) m	March
वैशाख (वैशाख) m	April
जेठ (ज्येष्ठ) m	May

Hindi Months      Corresponding English Months

अमास ( आषाढ ) m	June
सावन ( श्रावण ) m	July
भादों ( भाद्रपद ) m	August
आमिन ( आश्विन ) m	September
कातिक ( कार्तिक ) m	October
अगहन ( मर्गशीर्ष ) m	November
पूस ( पौष ) m	December
माघ m	January
फागुन ( फाल्गुन ) m	February

28. Seasons ऋतुयें f

वसन्त m	spring
ग्रष्म f ( गर्मी )	hot season
वर्षा f ( बरसात )	rainy season
शरद f	Autumn
हेमन्त m ( जाड़ा )	winter
शिशिर m	cold or dewy season

29. Coins सिक्के m

पैसे m	=	3 pies
अधजा m	=	6 pies
आना m	=	12 pies

दुआन्नी f	=	2 anna piece
चौआन्नी f	=	4 anna „
अठआन्नी f	=	8 anna „
नोट m	=	note
पाँच रुपये का नोट=		five rupee note
दस रुपये का नोट =		ten rupee note

### 30 Weight तोल m

तोला m	=	exact weight of a rupee
छटाँक m	=	5 tolas
पाव m	=	20 tolas
सेर m	=	80 tolas
पसेरी f	=	5 seers
मन m	=	40 seers



# ***Part VII***



## **VOCABULARY ENGLISH-HINDI**



**( 753 words )**



## ABBREVIATIONS:

m=masculin; (noun) f=feminine; adj=adjective  
 int=intransitive (verb); t=transitive (verb); pron=  
 pronoun; adv=adverb; conj=conjunction; interj=  
 interjection; p.p.=postposition

### A

Able, to	सकना v. i. adj. योग्य, लायक चतुर
About	करीब; लगभग, नजदीक, निकट, चारों तरफ बाद में, विषय में adv.
Abuse	गाली f, verb गाली देना t.
Accept, to	मानना, स्वीकार करना int.
Account	हिसाब; हाल m
Acquire, to	प्राप्त करना, पाना, हासिल करना, कमाना t.
Across	पार, आरपार, तिरछा adv. and p. p.
Advantage	लाभ, फायदा m
After	पछे, पश्चात्, अनुकुल adv. and p. p.
Afternoon	तीसरा पहर m दोपहर के बाद
Again	फिर एकबार और, दूसरी दफा adv.
Almirah	अलमारी f
Alas	आह, शोक, हाय, अहः, हा interj.

All	सारा, सब, पूरा, कुलadi.
Alms	भीख भिक्षा, f दान खैरात m
Alone	अकंला adj
Although	यद्यपि ऐसा होने पर भी conj
Among	बीच, में. भीतर p. p.
And	और, तथा, वा conj
Animal	पशु जानवर m
Anna	आना m
Answer	उत्तर, जवाब m
Anxious	चिन्तित, व्याकुल, बेचैन
Any	कोई, किसी adj
Arabic	अरबी f
Arm	बाँह, भुजा f arms हथियार m
Arrive	पहुँचना int
Arrow	तीर, बाण m
As	ऐसा, जैसा, क्योंकि, ज्योंही adv.and conj
Ask, to	पूछना माँगना ( request )
At last	अन्त में आखिर को adv.
Axe	कुल्हाड़ी
	B
Baby	बच्चा m or f
Back	पीठ f पीछे adv.

Bamboo	बाँस m
Bank (of river)	किनारा, तट, तीर m
Bare	नङ्गा, नग्न, खुला हुआ adj-
Bark	झाल, झिलका m verb भूकना int
Bathe to	नहाना, स्नान करना int.
Basket	टोकरी, डलिया f
Battle	लड़ाई युद्ध m
Bear	रीछ, भालू m, verb सहना f
Beak	चोंच f
Be, to	होना रहना, int.
Bengali	बङ्गाली f (language)
Beauty	सुन्दरता, शोभा, खूबसूरती f
Beautiful	सुन्दर, खूबसूरती adj.
Because	क्योंकि, इस कारण से conj
Bed	बिछौना. बिस्तरा m (bedding) खाट खटिया चारपाई f पलङ्ग m (bedstead)
Before	आगे, सामने p. p.
Beggar	भिखारी m or f
Begain, to	लगना. int. शुरू करना, आरम्भ करना
Behind	पीछे p. p.
Believe to	बिश्वास करना, यकीन करना t.
Bell	घन्टी f



Beloved	प्यारा, प्रिय adj
Below	नीचे तले p. p.
Best	सबसे अच्छा, उत्तम adj.
Beyond	के पार, परे आगे p. p.
Big	बड़ा भारी adj
Bird	चिड़िया f पक्षी, m
Birth	जन्म m
Black	काजा adj
Blanket	कम्बल m
Blessing	आशीर्वाद m
Blind	अन्धा adj
Blood	लहू, खून, रक्त m
Boat	नाव. m किश्ती, डोंगी f
Body	शरीर, देह m
Boil to	उगालना f.
Bold	साहसी, बहादुर adj
Book	पुस्तक, किताब, f
Both	दोनों adj. & pron.
Box	सन्दूक m
Boy	लड़का, बालक m
Branch	डाली, शाखा f

Brass	पीतल m
Bread	रोटी f
Break, to	तोड़ना, t.
Brick	ईंट f
Bride	दुलहिन, बधू, f
Bridegroom	दुल्हा, वर, m
Bridge	पुल m
Bring. to	लाना, ले आना t.
Broad	चौड़ा adj.
Broom	भाङू, बुहारी, बदनी f
Build, to	बनाना t.
Bullet	गोली (बन्दूक) f
Bunch	गुच्छा m
Burn, to	जलना; फूँकना t.
Butcher	कसाई अधिक m.
But	अतिरिक्त सिवाय p. p. परन्तु (पर) किन्तु लेकिन conj.
Butter	मक्खन m
Buy. to	खरीदना, मोल लेना t.
<b>C</b>	
Call, to	बुलाना(summon). पुकारना(call). कहना.
Calf	बछड़ा, बछवा (male) बछिया (female).

Can	सकना int.
Candle	मोमबत्ती f
Cap	टोपी f
Capital	राजधानी f (country) पूंजी f (money)
Care	चिन्ता. फिक्र f परवाह; ध्यान m
Carry	लेजाना, ढोना f
Catch, to	पकड़ना t.
Certain	निश्चय बक्का (sure) कोई, एक, कितने adj
Chain	जंजीर f
Chair	कुर्सी (कुरसी) f
Chairman	सभापति m
Charcoal	लकड़ी का कोयला m
Cheap	सस्ता adj
Chief	मुख्य, खास, adj. सरदार, मुखिया m
Child	बच्चा, बालक m or f
Christian	ईसाई m or f
Church	गिरजा m
City	शहर; नगर m
Clap, to	ताली बजाना t
Class	कक्षा, श्रेणी f दर्जा जमात m
Clean	साफ adj
Clerk	मुंशी, लेखक, किरानी m

Clever	चालाक, होशियार, चतुर, adj.
Climate	आबहवा f, जलवायु, मौसिम m
Climb, to	चढ़ना int.
Close, to	बंद करना t.
Cloth	कपड़ा, वस्त्र m
Cloud	बादल m
Cold	ठंड m सर्दी f
Command	आज्ञा f हुक्म m
Complain	शिकायत f
Condition	दशा. अवस्था, हालत, f (state). शर्त f (term)
Congratulation	बधाई. मुबारकबादी f
Consent, to	स्वीकार करना. मन्जूर करना, मानना t.
Conversation	बातचीत f
Cook, to	पकाना t
Copy to	नकल करना: नकल उतारना t
Cost	दाम. मूल्य m कीमत f
Count, to	गिनती करना गिनना t
Counterfeit	नकली खोटा adj.
Country	देश, मुल्क m
Courage	साहस m, हिम्मत f
Court	कचहरी, अदालत f (of law) दरबार m (royal)

Cover, to	छिपाना; ढाँकना t
Crowd	भीड़ f
Crown	मुकट, ताज m
Cry, to	रोना, int. पुकारना t
Cultivator	किसान m
Cure, to	अच्छा करना चक्का करना आराम करना
<b>D</b>	
Dance, to	नाचना int.
Dark	अंधेरा, काला adj.
Date	तारीख, तिथि, मिति खजूर m (fruit)
Deaf	बहरा abj
Dear	प्यारा, प्रिय adj. महंगा (costly)
Deceive, to	धोखा देना, छल करना t.
Deer	हिरन मृग m
Defeat	हार, पराजय, t
Delay	देरी t बिम्बल m, verb देरी करना, टालना
Desire	इच्छा चाह f
Die, to	मर जाना, देहान्त होना. स्वर्गवास होना int
Difficult	कठिन मुश्किल adj
Dig, to	खोदना t.
Dinner	भोजन, खाना m
Dirty	मैला, गन्दा adj.

Disease	रोग m, बीमारी f
District	ज़िला m
Do, to	करना t.
Door	दरवाज़ा, द्वार m
Doubt	सन्देह, शक m शंका f
Dozen	दज़न adj.
Drain	नाली, मोरी f
Dress	कपड़ा, वस्त्र, पोशाक m
Drink. to	पीना t
Drive, to	हांकना, चलाना t.
Drop	बूंद f
Dry	सूखा adj.
Dumb	गूंगा adj.
Dust	धूल, मिट्टी f
Dye, to	रंगना t.
	ए
Each	हरएक, प्रत्येक, प्रति adj.
Early	सवेरे, पूर्व जल्दी. शीघ्र adv.
Earn, to	कमाना, पैदा करना t.
Earth	पृथ्वी. दुनिया f संसार, मिट्टी. भूमि, जमीन
Earthquake	भूडोल, भूचाल, भूकम्प m
Eat	खरल, सहज, आसान adj.

East	पूरब (पूर्व) m
Eat to	खाना, भोजन करना t.
Edge	किनारा, कोर m
Education	शिक्षा. तालीम, पढ़ाई. f
Egg	अंडा m
Elder	बड़ा adj.
Electricity	बिजली f
Else	और भी adj. and pronoun. नहीं, तो, अतिरिक्त, तो, adv. conj.
Employ, to	नौकर रखना, काम में लगाना t.
Employer	मालिक m
Empty	खाली adj.
End	अन्त m
Enemy	शत्रु, बैरी. दुशमन m or f
English	अंग्रेजी f (language) अंग्रेज m (people)
Enter, to	घुसना, t. भीतर जाना int.
Equal	समान, बराबर, एकसा adj.
Error	अशुद्धि. गलती, भूल f
Essay	लेख, निबन्ध m
Evening	संध्या, सँक, शाम f
Examination	परीक्षा, f इम्तिहान m

Exchange, to	बदलना f
Excuse, to	क्षमा करना. माफ करना t
Explain, to	समझाना, बतलाना t
Eye	आँख f नेत्र m

## F

Face	मुँह ( मुख ); चेहरा m
Fair	सुन्दर, साफ, गोरा adj
Faithful	ईमानदार, सच्चा, विश्वासी adj
Fall, to	गिरना int
Famine	अकाल m
Famous	प्रसिद्ध, मशहूर, नामी adj
Far	दूर adj. and adv.
Farmer	किसान m
Fast	व्रत, उपवास m ; तेज, जल्दी adj
Fat	मोटा adj
Father	पिता, बाप m
Feast	भोज, m दावत f
Fault	दोष, कसूर m
Fear	डर, भय m
Feather	पर. पंख m
Feed, to	खिलाना t
Festival	त्योहार, पर्व, उत्सव m



Field	खेत. मैदान m
Fight to	लड़ना, int युद्ध करना t
Fill to	भरना t
Finish, to	पूरा करना, समाप्त करना, खत्म करना t
Fire	आग, अग्नि f
Fish	मछली f
Fisher-man	मछुआ, मत्स्याह, धीवर m
Flag	झण्डा, m; झण्डी f
Flesh	मांस. गोश्त m
Flood	बाढ़ f
Floor	फर्श m
Flour	आटा; मैदा m
Flower	फूल m
Fool	मूर्ख, बेवकूफ m
Forbid, to	मना करना t
Forget, to	भूलना, भूल जाना int
Forest	अञ्जल; वन m
Fork	कांटा m
Fort-night	पक्ष m
Friend	मित्र, दोस्त m
Fresh	ताज़ा, नया adj
Front	सामने, आगे pp

Fulfil, to	पूरा करना t
Fun	खेल, तमाशा m विल्लागी f
Furnitur	मात, असबाब, सामान m
G	
Ganges	गङ्गा (गंगा) f
Garden	बाग़, बगीचा m ; फुलबाड़ी f
Gate	फाटक, दरवाजा m
Gather	बटोरना, इकट्ठा करना t
Geography	भूगोल m
Gentleman	सज्जन, महाशय m
Ghost	भूत, प्रेत m
Glass	शीशा, बाँच, आईना(mirror)गिलास m (tumbler)
Go to	जाना int
Go back, to	लौटना, वापिस जाना int
Goat	बकरा m ; बकरी f
God	ईश्वर, परमेश्वर, भगवान, खुदा, देवता m
Goddess	देवी f
Gold	सोना m
Gong	घन्टा m घन्टी f
Good	अच्छा, भला, नेक. उम्मा, बढ़िया adj
Goods	माल, असबाब m

Government	सरकार f
Grammar	व्याकरण m
Grass	घास f
Graze, to	चरना, int चराना t
Great	बड़ा, महान, उत्तम adj
Groom	साईस; दूल्हा m
Ground	जमीन, भूमि, धरती f
Gum	गोंद m verb गोंद से चिपकाना t

## H

Habit	आदत, आन f अभ्यास m (practice) स्वभाव m प्रकृति f (nature)
Hair	बाल, केश m
Half	आधा adj
Hang to	लटकना, int ; लटकाना t
Happiness	सुख, आनन्द, m ; खुशी f
Hord	कड़ा, सख्त, m ; कठिन, मुशकिल adj (difficult)
Hat	टोपी, f ; टोप m
Hear, to	सुनना t
Heart	दिल, हृदय, मन m
Heat	गरमी (गर्मी) f
Heavy	भारी adj

Help, to	सहायता करना, मदद करना t
Here	यहाँ, यहीं पर, इस जगह adv
Hide	छिपना int; छिपाना t
High	ऊँचा adj
Hill	पहाड़ m
Him	उसको, उसे pron
Hit to	मारना t
Holiday	छुट्टी, तातील f
Home	घर, मकान, बतन m; जन्मभूमि f
Honest	ईमानदार, सच्चा adj
Honey	मधु, शहद f
Hoof	खुर, सुम m
Hope	आशा, उम्मीद f
Horn	सींग m
Hospital	अस्पताल m
Hot	गरम adj
How	कैसा adj कैसे adv
Hunger	भूख f भूखा (hungry) adj
Hurt, to	दुख देना, दुखाना t
Hunter	शिकारी m
I	
I	मैं pron
Ice	बर्फ f

Idle	आलसी adj
If	यदि; जो, अगर conj.
Ill	धीमार adj बीमारी f (illness)
Important	आवश्यक, मुख्य, बड़ा adj
In	में, भीतर, अन्दर p.p.
Indeed	सचमुच. यथार्थ; वास्तव में adv
Invite, to	दुकानों, निमंत्रण देना t
Iron	लोहा, इस्तरी करना t
Instead	बदले में, जगह में, बजाय adv

## J

Jar	घड़ा m
Jamna (River)	जमुना f
Jackal	स्यार, गीदड़ m
Join, to	जोड़ना, मिलाना
Joke	हंसी, दिल्लगी f
Journey	यात्रा f ; सफर m
Joy	आनन्द m ; खुशी f
Jump	कूदना int

## K

Kalimpong	कैलिम्पङ्ग m
Keep to,	रखना, धरना t
Kerosene	मिट्टी का तेल m

Kill	मारना डालना, जान से t
Kind	दयालु, कृगलु, महश्वान abj , प्रकार, किस्म m . तरह भौति f (sort)
King	राजा, महाराजा, बादशाह m
Kiss, to	चूमना. प्यार करना, बोसा लेना t
Kitchen	रसोईधर, बाबर्ची खाना m
Knee	घुटना m
Know, to	जानना पहचाना (recognise)

L

Labourer	मजदूर m
Ladder	सीढ़ी f
Lady	स्त्री, महिला, देवी, मेमसाहिब f
Lame	लंगड़ा adj
Lamp	लालटेन , चिराग m, बत्ती f
Land	जमीन, भूमि f, मुल्क देश m (country)
Language	भाषा, बोली, जवान f
Large	बड़ा m
Late	देर adj
Laugh, to	हँसना int,
Laziness	सुस्ती f. आलस्य m
Lazy	सुस्त, आलसी adj
Leaf	पन्ना m, पत्ती f , सफा (page)

Leap	उछलना, कूदना int
Learn, to	सीखना, पढ़ना, याद करना t
Learned	विद्वान्, पंडित adj
Leather	चम f m
Leave	छुटी, आज्ञा f, छोड़ना t
Left	बाँया adj
Less	कम, थोड़ा adj
Lesson	पाठ, सबक m, शिक्षा f
Let, to	देना t
Letter	चिट्ठी f, पत्र, खत, अक्षर m (alphabet)
Lick to	चाटना t
Lie, to	लेटना, झूठ बोलना int
Life	प्राण, जीवन-m, ज्ञान, त्रिन्दगी f
Lift, to	उठाना t
Like, to	चाहना, पसन्द करना t, समान, ऐसा adj
Lime	चूना m
Liquor	मदिरा, शराब f (alcoholic)
Little	छोटा, थोड़ा; जरा adj
Live, to	रहना, जीना, जीता रहना int
Load	बोझ, भार m; verb ढोना t
Loaf	पाव रोटी, डबलरोटी f
Long	लम्बा adj, बड़ी दूर, बड़ी देर adv

Loose	ढीला adj
Love	प्रेम, प्यार m
Lovely	सुन्दर, मनोहर adj
<b>M</b>	
Machine	मशीन; f , फल m
Mad	पागल adj
Magistrate	मैजिस्ट्रेट, हाकिम m
Maid-servant	नौकरानी, दासी f
Mail	डाक f
Make. to	बनाना, करना, पैदा करना, f
Man	आदमी, मनुष्य m
Many	बहुत, अनेक adj
Map	नक्शा m
Marriage	विवाह, व्याह m, शादी f
Ma-ter	मालिक m
Magic	जादू m
Me	मुझे pron
Meal	खाना, भोजन m
Meanwhile	इसी बीच में, तब तक, इतने में adv
Medicine	दवा, दवाई, औषधि f
Meet, to	मिलना int भेंट करना, मुलाकात करना &
Meeting	सभा f , जलसा m



Middle	बीच, मध्य m
Mile	मील m
Milk	दूध m, verb दुहना
Mind	चित्त; मन, दिल m, verb ध्यान देना &
Miser	कन्जूस adj.
Mistake	गलती, भूल. अशुद्धि f
Mix, to	मिलाना &
Mohammedan	मुसलमान m
Money	रुपया, पैसा, धन m
Mongoose	नेवला m
More	और, अधिक, ज्यादा adj.
Moque	मसजिद f
Move, to	चलना, हटना il&, चलाना. हटाना &
Mule	खशर m
Museum	अजायब घर m
My	मेरा, अपना (reflexive)

## N

Nail	कील, काँटी f, नाखून, नख m
Naked	नङ्गा adj
Name	नाम m
Narrow	तङ्ग adj
Near	पास, निकट, नजदीक, समीप, करीब adv

Neck	गला, m ; गर्दन f
Necklace	माला f , हार m
Needle	सुई f
Neighbour	पड़ोसी m
Net	जाल, फन्दा m (trap)
Never	कभी नहीं, adv.
New	नया, नवीन, नूतन adj
News	खबर f समाचार m
News-paper	अखबार, समाचार पत्र m
Next	उसके बाद, दूसरा, आगामी, adj.
Nice	अच्छा, उम्दा, बारीक adj.
Noise	आवाज f . शोर, गुन m
North	उत्तर m
Now-a-days	आजकल, इन दिनों adv
Number	संख्या; गिनती f , अंक m (figure)
Nurse	नर्स, दाई f

O

Oath	कसम, शपथ, सौगन्ध f
Obey	आज्ञा मानना, हुक्म मानना, करना v
Occupation	काम, पेशा. धन्धा m
Office	पद, ओहदा. इफ्तर m (building)
Officer	अफसर, ओहदेदार m

Often	प्राय, बहुधा अक्सर बार बार adv
Ointment	मरहम, मलहम m
Old	पुराना, बुढ़ा, बूढ़ा adj
One-eyed	काना adj
Only	केवल, खाली, सिर्फ adv अकेला (single) adj
Open, to	खुलना int, खोलना t
Opinion	बिचार m, राय, सम्मति f
Or	या, वा, अथवा conj
Oral	जबानी, मौखिक adj
Order	आज्ञा f, हुकम m, verb आज्ञा देना, हुकम देना t
Ornament	सजावट f (decoration) गहना, जेवर m (jewellery)
Orphan	यतीम, अनाथ adj, यतीमखाना अनाथालय (orphanage)
Other	दूसरा, और, अन्य, पराया adj.
Our	हमारा, अपना, pron.
Out	बाहर, दूर adv.
<b>P</b>	
Pain	दर्द, दुख, m, पीड़ा f
Pair	जोड़ा adj.
Palace	महल, राजमहल m
Punjab	पंजाब, m पंजाबी (language)

Parent	माँ-बाप, माता-पिता m
Path	पथ, रास्ता, मार्ग m
Pay, to	चुकाना, देना t, (noun) बेटन, तलब, तनख्वाह f ( pay )
Pearl	माती m
Peasant	किसान m (farmer) देहाती (rustic)
People	लोग m , जनता, प्रजा f (subject)
Permission	आज्ञा, इजाजत f , हुक्म m
Pice	पैसा m
Picture	चित्र m ; तसवीर
Piece	टुकड़ा m
Pillar	खंभा m
Pity	दया f , रहम m
Place	जगह, स्थान f
Play, to	खिलना int, noun काटक m ( play )
Playful	खिलाड़ी adj
Please, to	खुश करना, प्रसन्न करना t
Plough	हल m , verb हल जोतना t
Pocket	जेब t
Police	पुलिस f , सिपाही m
Poor	रीं, कंगाल, दरिद्र, बेचारा adj ( miserable)

Post, to	डाक में डालना t
Post-office	डाकघर, डाकखाना m
Pot	बर्तन m
Prayer	प्रार्थना f
Press	छापाखाना m
Prey	शिकार m
Price	दाम, मूल्य m, कीमत f
Prime minister	प्रधान-मंत्री, बजीरे-आज़म m
Prince	राजकुमार, शाहजादा m
Prize	इनाम, पुरस्कार, पारितोषिक m
Punish, to	सजा देना, दण्ड देना t
Purchase, to	खरीदना, मोललेना t
Put, to	रखना, धरना; रखदेना t, पहिनना (put on)

## Q

Quarrel	झगड़ा, लड़ाई f
Queen	रानी, माहारानी, बेगम f
Question	प्रश्न, सवाल m, ve b प्रश्न करना, सवाल पूछना t
Quickly	जल्दी, तुरन्त, शीघ्र, झटपट adv
Quietly	चुपचाप, धीरे धीरे, खामोशी से adv
Quite	सब, बिल्कुल adv

## R

Rabbit	खरगोश खरहा m
Rag	बिथड़ m
Rain	बर्षा बारिश f, मेघ (मेंह) पानी m; verb बरसना int.
Raise, to	उठाना ऊँचा करना t
Raw	कच्चा adj.
Ray	किरण ( किरन f
Razor	छुरा उस्तरा m
Read, to	पढ़ना बाँचना t
Ready	तैयार m(prepared) शीघ्र फौरन तुरन्त m ( prompt )
Receipt	रसीद f
Receive, to	लेना पाना मिलना स्वागत करना t ( welcome )
Recognise, to	पहचानना, जानना t
Recommend, to	सिफारिश करना t .
Refund. to	लौटाना, वापिस, करना, फेरना t
Remind, to	याद दिलावना t.
Reply	उत्तर, जवाब m
Require. to	चाहना, माँगना t
Rest	आराम m .

Return, to	लौट आना वापिस आना int.
Rice	चावल m (uncooked) भात m (cooked)
Rich	धनी धनवान अमीर adj.
Riches	धन m, दौलत, सम्पत्ति f
Ride, to	चढ़ना सयाव होना int.
Right	दाहिना (not left) ठीक सही (correct) noun अधिकार m
Ripe	पक्का adj.
Road	सड़क f
Rob, to	चोरी करना, लुटना t
Robber	चोर डाकू m
Room	कमरा m, कोठरी f (apartment) जगह f स्थान m (space)
Roof	छत f
Rope	रस्सी डोरी f
Rose	गुलाब m
Round	गोल घेग चक्कर m, निकट नजदीक (about) adv and q.p.
Run, to	दौड़ना भागना भाग जाना int. (to run away)

S

Sad	उदास adj.
Saddle	डीन m
Sago	साबूदाना m
Sample	नमूना m नानगी f
sand	धालू m रेत f
Save, to	बचाना, किफायत करना t (economise)
Say; to	कहना, बात करना, बताना t
Scales	तराजू f
School	स्कूल विद्यालय मदरसा m पाठशाला t
Scream, to	चिल्लाना, चीखना int.
Search, to	खोजना छूँटना जल्दारा करना पता लगाना t
See, to	देखना; ताकना (stare) t
Seed	बीज बीया m
Self	आप खुद pron.
Sell, to	बेचना t
Send, to	भेजना, बुलाना t (send for)
Separate, to	अलग होना, जुदा होना; int. करना t
Several	कई, अनेक, कई एक adj.
Shade	छाया छाँह f
Shake; to	हिलाना, कौलना int. हिलाना t
Shame	लज्जा; लाँच, राम f



Still	तिलपरभी तथापि तोभी (nevertheless) adv., चुल्चाय भौन खामोश रात adj.
Stone	पत्थर m
Story	कहानी किस्सा कथा f
Street	गस्ता सड़क m गली f
Student	विद्यार्थी छात्र m
Study, to	पढ़ना सीखना t.
Subject	विषय मजमून m (topic) noun प्रजा f
Such	ऐसा वैसा जैसा इसी प्रकार का adj.
Suck, to	चूटना (दूध) पीना t
Sue, to	नालिश करना t
Suffer	सहना बढ़ाईत करना नुकसान उठाना t (suffer, loss)
Sudden	अचानक अकस्मात् एकाएक सहसा adv.
Sufficient	बस बहुत काफी adj.
Sugar-cane	गन्ना ऊख m
Sure	निश्चय अवश्य जरूर adj.
Surprise	आश्चर्य अचम्भा विस्मय m
Surround, to	घेरना. घेर लेना t
Sweep, to	मक्कना बुहारना int.
Swear, to	कसम खाना t
Sweet	मीठा मधुर adj.
Swift	तेज adj.

Swim. to	तैरना int.
Swing	झूला m झुलाना हिलाना t
Sword	तलवार f

## T

Table	मेज f
Tail	पूंछ दुम f
Talk. to	बात करना, बातचीत करना t
Tall	लम्बा, ऊँचा adj.
Tame	पालतू. बरेलू adj.
Tank	तालाब; सरोवर m
Teach. to	पढ़ाना, सिखाना, शिक्षा देना t
Teacher	अध्यापक शिक्षक उस्ताद गुरु m
Tear	आँसू m
Tear, to	चीरना फाड़ना टुकड़े करना, t
Telegram	तार m or f
Tell. to	बतलाना, बोलना, कहना, t
Temple	मन्दिर m
Tent	डेरा. तबू, खेमा m
Terrible	भयानक, डरावना adj.
Than	से, अपेक्षा, बनिश्चत से pp.
Thank. to	धन्यवाद देना or करना t
Thankful	कृतज्ञ adj.

Thankless	कृतघ्न adj.
That	वह उस pron. & adj. जो, कि conj.
Their	उनका अपना pron.
Them	उन्हें, उनको pron.
Then	तब उसके बाद, उसके पीछे उस समय adv
There	वहां, वहाँ पर, उधर, उस जगह adv.
Therefore	इसलिये, इस कारणसे, अतः, अतएव conj
Thick	मोटा (e. g. cloth, paper). गाढ़ा (e.g. liquid), घना (dense) adj.
Thief	चोर m चोरी f (theft)
Thin	पतला, दुबला, (weakly) बारीक (fine) adj.
This	यह इस pron.
Thither	वहाँ; उधर adv.
Thorn	कौंटा m
Though	द्यपि conj
Thread	धागा, तागा, सूत
Through	मेंसे, मेंहोकर, के द्वारा pp.
Throw, to	फेंकना t
Thunder, to	गरजना int.
Tidy	साफ, सुथरा. ठीक-ठाक adj.
Tighten, to	कसना t
Timid	कायर, डरपोक, भीरु adj.

To	को के पास तरु p.p.
Together	एक साथ मिलकर, मिल-जुल कर adv.
Too	भी (as well) बहुत अति (excess)adv <sup>v</sup>
Touch, to	छूना t
Toward	की ओर की तरफ p.p.
Town	नगर शहर m
Toy	खिलौना m
Translate, to	अनुवाद करना उल्था करना तर्जुमा करना t
Trap	फंदा m (snare)
Treasury	खज़ाना कोष m
Tree	पेड़ वृक्ष m
Tremble, to	काँटना int.
Tributary	सहायक छोटा adj.
Troop	फौज पल्टन सेना f
Trouble	तकलीफ़ f कष्ट दुःख m
True	सच्चा सच सत्य ठीक adj.
Truth	सच्चाई f सत्य ठीक m
Try, to	कोशिश करना यत्न करना (endeavour) जाँचना (test) t
Tumble, to	गिर पड़ना int.
Turban	पगड़ी f साफ़ा m
Turn to	धूमना फिरना मुड़ना बदलना int. बुझावा फिरोना t, noun बारो f.

Twice	दूना, दुगना, दोबार adv.
Ty-phoon	तूफान m.
U	
Umbrella	छाता m , छतरी f
Under	नीचे, तले p p.
Understand, to	समझना, जानना, मालूम करना &
Unite, to	मिलान, जोड़ना, एक करना &
University	विश्वविद्यालय m
Untill	जब तक conj, तक p.p.
Untouchable	अछूत m
Unworthy	अयोग्य नास्वायक abj
Up	ऊँचा adj ; ऊपर पर p. p.
Uplift, to	उठाना &
Urgent	जरूरी, आवश्यक, जल्दी का adj
Urinal	पेशाबघर m
Us	हमें. हमको prop.
Use, to	काम में लाना-int इस्तेमाल करना &
Useful	उपयोगी, लाभदायक, काम का adj.
V	
Vacant	खाली adj.
Vacation	छुट्टी f
Vaccination	टीका m

Value	वाम m , कीमत f
Vegetable	तरकारी, सब्जी, भाजी, साग (शाक) m
Veil	परदा, घूँघट, बुरका m
Very	बहुत, अत्यन्त adj. and adv. (exceedingly)
Victory	जीत, जय, विजय, फतह f
Village	गाँव, ग्राम. बस्ती f
Villain	बदमाश, दुष्ट, दुर्जुन, पात्री adj.
Virgin	कुमारी, क्वैरी, कन्या f
Visit, to	मेंट करना, मुलाकात करना t. मिलना int. देखना t
Vomit, to	कै करना, उलटी करना t
<b>M</b>	
Wages	वेतन, तलब m, तनख्वाह मजदूरी f ( daily )
Wait, to	ठहरना, रहना, बैठना int.
Wake, to	जागना int. जगाना, t
Walk, to	चलना पैदल चलना, टहलना, घूमना int (take a walk)
Wall	दीवार, दीवाल f
Want, to	चाहना ( desire ) , माँगना (request)t
Wash; to	धोना, साफ करना t , स्नान करना, गुस्ल करना t (bath)

Watch	घड़ी, जेबघड़ी f
Watch-man	चौकीदार, पहरेदार m
Water	पानी, जल m
We	हम pron.
Weak	कमजोर, निर्बल adj.
Wear, to	पहनना, पहिरना t
Weather	हवा f, मौसम m (season), आबहवा f (climate)
Weep. to	राना int, आँसू गिराना or बहाना t
Weight	ताल, वजन m
Well	कुआ, कुआं m (of water) कुशल, अच्छा m, खैरियत f (in health)
West	पश्चिम, पच्छिम m
Wet	गीला, भीगा adj.
What	क्या, कौन, कितना pron
Wheel	पहिया चक्र m
Whence	जहाँ से, कहाँ से adv.
When	जब, कब adv.
Whenever	जब कभी, जब जब, जिस समय adv
Whether	या, वा conj.
Which	जो, कौन; कौनसा conj.
Whip	चाबुक, रिप्टर, होड़ा m

Whistle	सीटी, f, verb सीटी बजाना t
Who	जो, कौन pron.
Whole	सब, सारा, कुल, तमाम, adj.
Whom	जिसको, (जिसे), किसको (किसे) pron.
Wicked	दुष्ट, पापी adj.
Window	खिड़की f
Wing	पंख, पर m
Wipe	पोंछना t
With	से, (के) साथ. संग, समेत p.p.
Without	(के) बिना, बाहर, परे p.p.
Woman	स्त्री, अंगरेज महिला, नारी f
Wood	लकड़ी f. काठ m
Wool	ऊन m, adj. ऊनी (woollen)
Word	शब्द m
Work	काम कार्य f, परिश्रम m; मेहनत t (hardwork)
Workman	मजदूर कुशी m (labourer), कारीगर मिस्त्री m (artisan)
World	संसार जगत m दुनियाँ, पृथ्वी
Worship, to	पूजा करना t
Write, to	लिखना t
Wrong	गलती. भूल f गलत adj.



## Y

Yard	गज m
Yell, to	चिल्लाना int.
Yes	हाँ, जी हाँ adv.
Yesterday	कल adv.
Yet	इस पर भी, तौभी, अबतक adv. (up to this time) —
Your	तुम्हारा, आपका, अपना pron.
Young	बच्चा m, कम उम्र का; छोटा; युवा, नौजवान adj.

## Z

Zeal	उत्साह, जोश m
Zero	शून्य m











